

**Travels into the interior parts of Africa, by the way of the Cape of Good Hope; in the years 1780, 81, 82, 83, 84, and 85 / Translated from the French. Illustrated with 12 elegant copper-plates.**

**Contributors**

Le Vaillant, François, 1753-1824.

**Publication/Creation**

London : Printed for G. G. and J. Robinson, 1796.

**Persistent URL**

<https://wellcomecollection.org/works/qqrmxhqf>

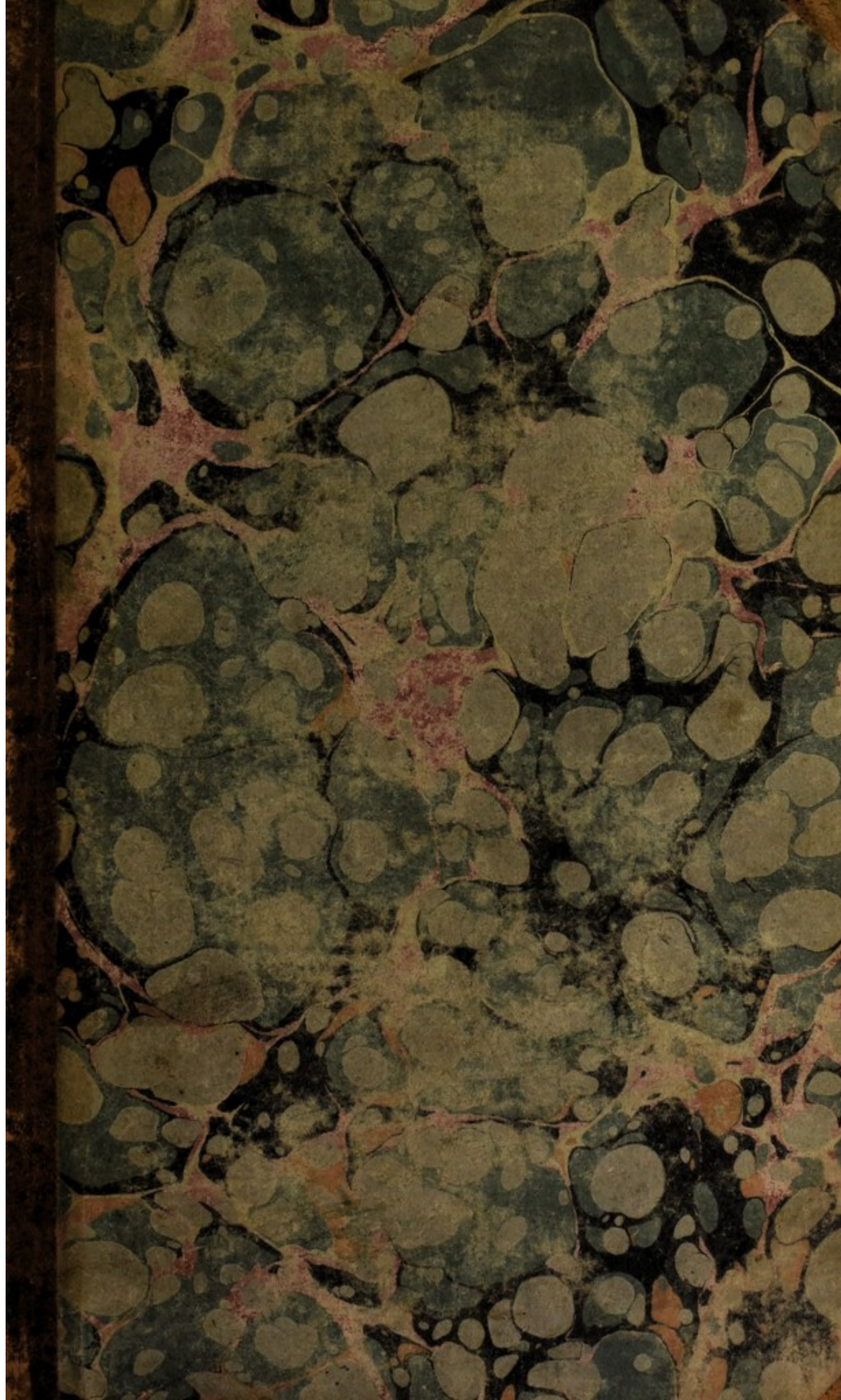
**License and attribution**

This work has been identified as being free of known restrictions under copyright law, including all related and neighbouring rights and is being made available under the Creative Commons, Public Domain Mark.

You can copy, modify, distribute and perform the work, even for commercial purposes, without asking permission.

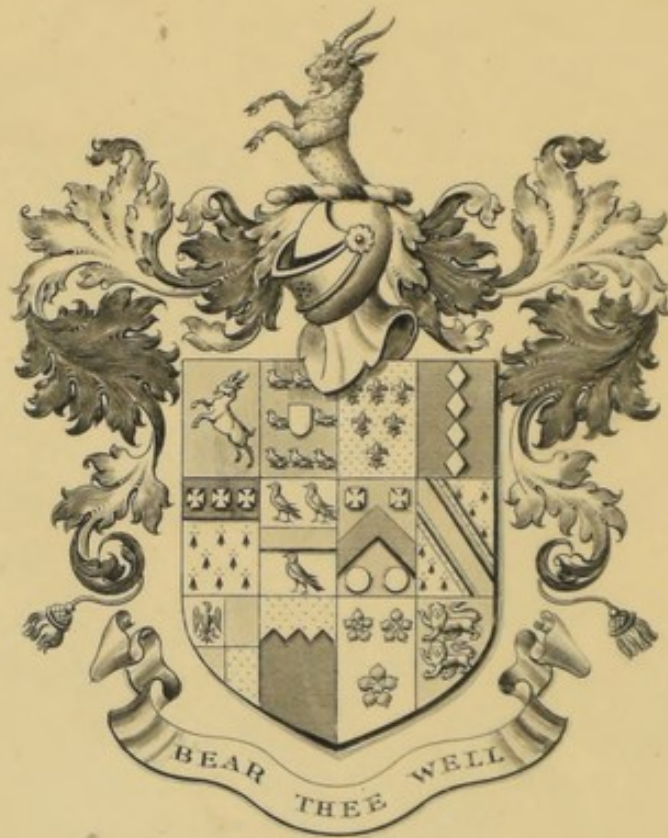
**wellcome  
collection**

Wellcome Collection  
183 Euston Road  
London NW1 2BE UK  
T +44 (0)20 7611 8722  
E [library@wellcomecollection.org](mailto:library@wellcomecollection.org)  
<https://wellcomecollection.org>



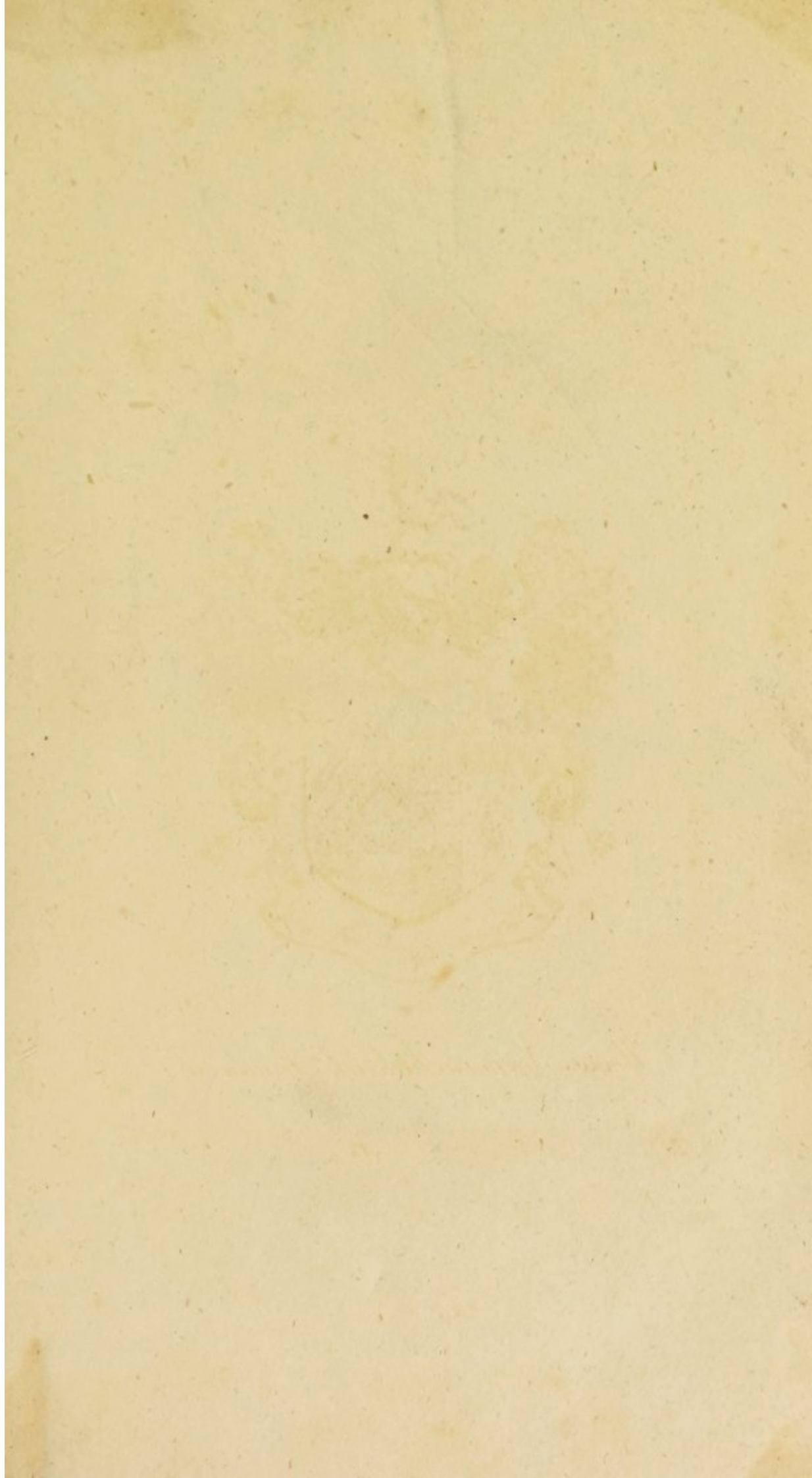
33379/B


vol 2 only



*Thomas Newman Frederick Bardwell.*

LE VAILLANT, François





Digitized by the Internet Archive  
in 2016 with funding from  
Wellcome Library

<https://archive.org/details/b28776185>

TRAVELS

INTO THE

INTERIOR PARTS

OF

*A F R I C A.*

BY THE WAY OF THE

CAPE OF GOOD HOPE;

IN THE YEARS 1780, 81, 82, 83, 84, AND 85.

TRANSLATED FROM THE FRENCH OF M. LE VAILLANT.

---

---

*THE SECOND EDITION.*

---

---

ILLUSTRATED WITH TWELVE ELEGANT COPPER-PLATES.

V O L. II.

---

---

L O N D O N :

PRINTED FOR G. G. AND J. ROBINSON, PATERNOSTER-  
ROW.

---

1796,

T. R. A. V. E. L. S.

INTO THE

INTERIOR PARTS

A. R. I. C. A.

BY THE WAY OF THE

CAYENNE OF GOOD HOPE

IN THE YEARS 1780, 81, 82, 83, 84, AND 85

BY WILLIAM WELLOOME, ESQ. OF THE TRENCH OF M. DE VALLART

THE SECOND EDITION



LONDON

PRINTED FOR C. AND J. BELL, OF, PATERNOSTER

ROW.

1785

---

# TRAVELS

INTO THE

INTERIOR PARTS

OF

*A F R I C A.*

---

**DURING** the thirty-six hours which I spent with these Gonaquas, I had time to make several observations that were of great use to me, and particularly respecting their language and pronunciation. I remarked that they make a clapping noise with the tongue like the rest of the Hottentots. This clapping I shall explain hereafter, and likewise the manner in which they vary it. Though their dialect was the same, they had, however, some terminations which neither I nor my people could always understand.



They differed from mine, in having the colour of their skin darker, the nose not so flat, and a greater stature; in a word, by a nobler air and figure. The portraits of Narina and a Gonaqua, faithfully copied, and here given, may serve to convey an idea of this difference.

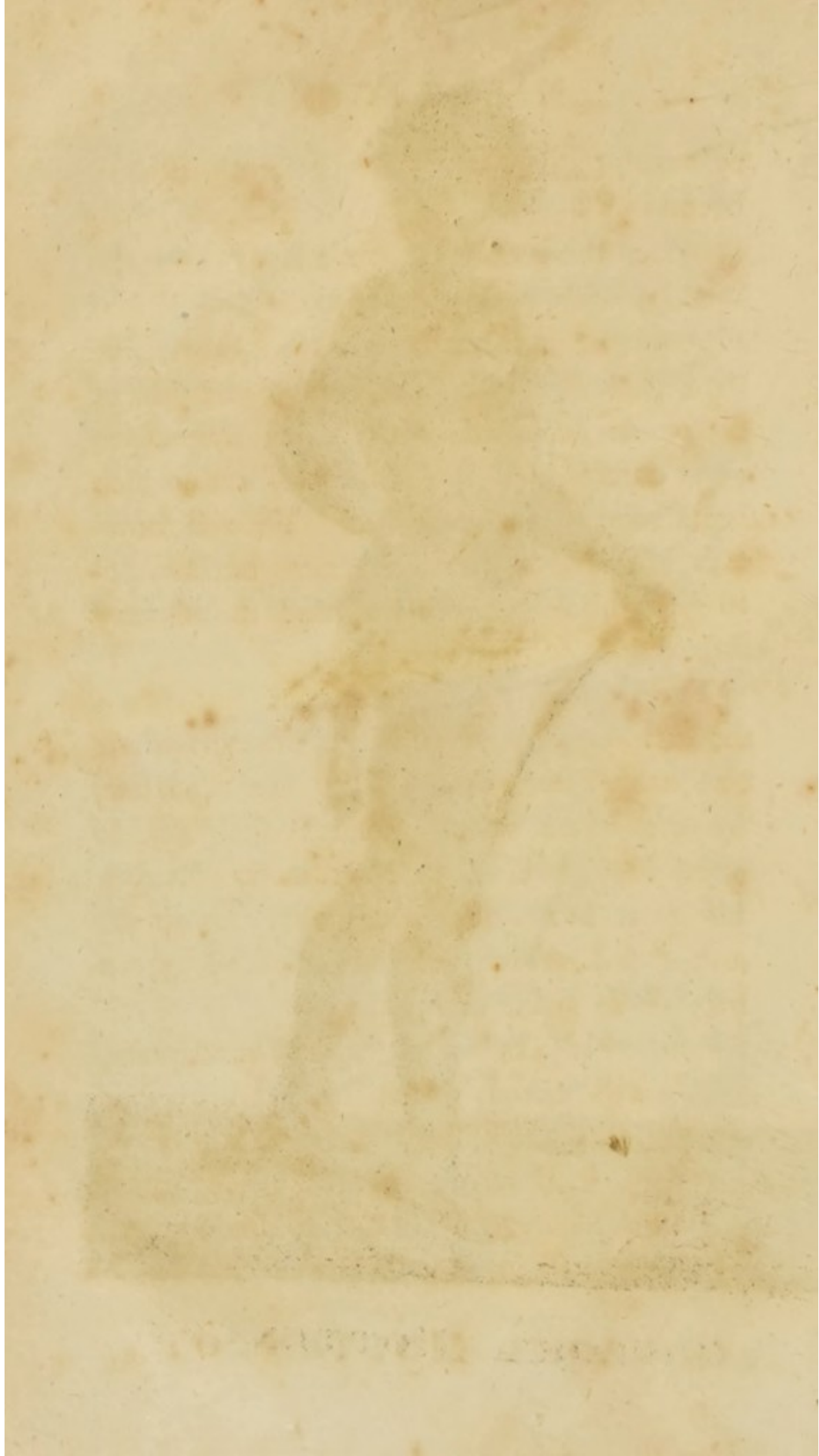
When they accost any one, they stretch forth the hand, saying, *Tabè*, I salute you. This word and ceremony, which are employed by the Caffres, are not used by the Hottentots, properly so called.

This affinity of customs, manners, and even conformation; their being so near Great Caffraria, and the accounts I afterwards received, convinced me that these hordes of Gonaquas, who equally resemble the Caffres and the Hottentots, must be a mixed breed produced by these two nations.

The dress of the men, arranged with more symmetry, has the same shape as that of the Hottentots; but, as the Gonaquas are a little taller, they make their mantles of calves instead of sheeps skins; they are both called *kross*. Several of them wear hanging from their necks a bit of ivory, or very white sheep's bone; and this contrast of the two colours



A GONAQUA HOTTENTOT.



colours produces a good effect, and is very becoming.

When the weather is excessively hot, the men lay aside every part of their dress that is superfluous, and retain only what they name their *jackals*. This is a piece of the skin of the animal so called, with which they cover what nature bids them conceal, and which is fastened to their girdle. This veil however, negligently arranged, may be considered as an useless appendage, and is of very little service to their modesty.

The women, much fonder of dress than the men, employ more care in adorning their persons. They wear a kross like the latter, but the apron which conceals their sex is larger than those of the Hottentots. During the great heats, they retain only this apron. with a skin which descends, behind, from their girdle to the calf of the leg.

Young girls, below the age of nine years, go perfectly naked; when they attain to that age, they wear nothing but a small apron.

I shall soon return to other peculiarities by which this nation are distinguished, for I have not yet done with them.

At night the Hottentot whom I had sent along with Haabas, arrived from his horde accompanied by two new Gonaquas, who brought me a fat ox, which their chief begged me to accept. Narina, putting me in mind of my promises, sent me a basket of goats-milk, which she knew I was very fond of. Her sister, when she saw the presents which she had received, regretted much that she had not gone along with her to visit my camp; and she ordered the two messengers of Haabas, from whom I learned this intelligence, to thank me for those I had sent her by her mother. Having accepted the ox and the sheep which were presented to me, I ordered the messengers to be entertained with tobacco and brandy. One of these people resembled Narina so much that I took him for her brother; but he was only her cousin. Features full of mildness, and an elegant figure, rendered this man one of the most beautiful savages I had ever seen. He told me several particulars respecting the Gonaquas which Haabas had not mentioned. He informed me that, before the war with the Caffres, his horde was composed of only one family, of which Narina's grandfather had been

been the last chief; that, at his death, it had remained a long time without any leader; but that, when the war broke out, Haabas' horde, which formerly inhabited the banks of the river, near its mouth, had joined his, that they might unite their forces, in case they should be attacked by the common enemy; that the horde would not receive Haabas, pretending that it was at liberty to choose its own chief; and that it was not just that strangers should give laws to a horde which had readily admitted them among them. He added, that there had been much quarrelling, and several combats between them; that a good deal of blood had been shed, some savages killed, and many wounded; but that their common interest having at length obliged them to unite against a sudden incursion of the Caffres, the prudent and courageous conduct of Haabas, who repelled their attack, had made him be unanimously proclaimed the chief of the two hordes, which by alliances, marriages, and good friendship, formed at that time only one.

When my brandy began to operate on the brains of these two Gonaquas, they seemed to be so fond of talking, that they could

scarcely put an end to their relations. It was near one in the morning when I quitted them, in order that I might retire to rest; and I recommended it to my people to imitate my example, as I intended next morning to go on a grand excursion, in pursuit of birds, and had fixed the break of day for the time of our departure.

Having set out as soon as the sun appeared, Narina's cousin requested permission to follow me, as he said it would give him great pleasure to see me fire my double-barrelled fusée, which was a phenomenon he could not comprehend.

I consented, therefore, and gave him my carabine to carry, because it might happen that we should meet with large animals in our way.

It was not long before I had an opportunity of gratifying *Amiroo's*\* curiosity; for having got within reach of a vulture, which I had seen perch on the point of a rock, I wounded it at the first shot, and killed it with a second, as it was attempting to fly. *Amiroo's* companions, when they returned to the horde, had told him that I could fire se-

\* This was the name of Narina's cousin.

veral times successively; but, naturally judging of my arms by his own, he could not believe that it was possible to wound twice with the same arrow. He was therefore greatly astonished to hear my second report, and to see the animal dead. He said he ardently wished to have an instrument like mine in his possession, to repel the Caffres; and he formed this wish with such an air and tone, as made me conclude, that man, if he is not the strongest of animals, is however the noblest and most courageous. He asked me why the planters had not fuses of the same kind; a question which appeared to be full of good sense, but it was impossible for me to answer it. The planters not only have none in their possession, but even before my arrival, they had never seen any of them; and on all the plantations that are at a distance from the Cape, my fuse was considered as a wonder and a singular curiosity.

In the midst of our conversation, I thought I perceived, by *Amiroo's* looks, that he imagined it possible for me to fire as often as I pleased; I was convinced of this by the embarrassing question which he afterwards proposed. A kite having passed over our heads,



I discharged both my shot at it; but it only made a turn round, and pursued its flight. Amiroo, upon this, asked me why I did not fire until I had killed it: but I could give him no answer, except that the bird was too common; that I did not care for it; and that, besides so much noise might frighten others which I was more desirous of procuring. By this shift, however awkward, I avoided explaining what it was prudent for me ever to conceal from him; and I increased that idea of superiority with which a white man every where impresses a savage.

My excursion was sufficiently successful; and, among other birds, I killed a cuckoo entirely unknown, which will form a new species in this genus.

Its plumage, which had nothing remarkable in it, was, throughout almost the whole body, of a dark brown colour. Its song consists of several sounds differently accented, and it may be heard at a great distance. As it sings whole hours without interruption, it betrays itself, and directs the fowler where to find it. In my ornithology I have named it the *criard*.

I killed likewise some fly-catchers, and a  
great

great number of touracos, of which we made fricassees, much superior to those made of Guinea-hens or partridges with the same sauce.

Narina's cousin seeing me bring down all sorts of little birds, close to him, with so much readiness, begged me to lend him my fusée, that he might try his dexterity; but it would have been bad policy in me to give him any instruction on this subject. Without wishing to be accounted a forcerer, I was desirous that he might be convinced, by his own experience, that there is a wide difference between a European and a Hottentot. Having loaded my fusée without putting lead into it, I suffered him to fire as long as he chose; but, having killed nothing, he became very impatient. Had I loaded my piece in the usual manner, he would not perhaps have been more successful; for, fearing that the priming would burn his face, he turned aside his head as soon as ever he presented the piece. His awkwardness, however, might have done some execution; and, on this account, I thought it best to leave nothing to chance: for it is certain that, had he killed only a single bird, my superiority would have been immediately lessened in his

his mind, and consequently in all the horde. If this idea did not secure my person, it at least flattered my vanity.

As we were returning to the camp, we fell in with a flock of bubales, at the distance of two hundred paces. Having killed one of them with my carabine, my companion appeared to be very much surpris'd, remembering that at the distance of fifteen paces he had not been able in several shots to kill even a small bird. He began to measure the prodigious distance between us and the bubale, As I observed that he seem'd to be lost in melancholy reflections, and to be under great uneasiness, I looked at him with an air of affection, and gave him every consolation in my power.—Amiable youth, who didst not know how estimable and engaging that simplicity was, which made thee appear so little before thy fellow-creature, long mayest thou retain thy happy ignorance! May I be the last stranger who, with rash steps, shall dare to tread thy native plains; and may thy solitude never be polluted!

We covered our bubale with the branches of trees; and, when I returned, I sent a horse to convey it to my camp.

To amuse Amiroo and his companion, I employed the rest of the day in skinning my birds. Having invited them to stay with me during the night, telling them that they must next day conduct me themselves to their horde, they seemed to be exceedingly glad; the evening was therefore spent in great merriment, and we drank tea, as usual, around a large fire. I ordered one of the sheep, which Haabas had sent, to be killed, upon which we made a charming supper; and after our repast amused ourselves with dancing and music; nor was the immortal lyre forgotten, for I had given two of them to my new guests. Having seen some of these instruments in the hands of those of their horde who had paid me a visit before them, their reputation was so much extolled, that they were impatient to have one, though they did not venture to ask it; I however anticipated their desire, and by this still added to the esteem and friendship which they entertained for me.

When it was time to retire to rest, I informed all my people how I intended to travel next morning, and ordered Klaas to have my two horses ready at the break of day.

When

When I awoke, Amiroo's companion had set out to inform Haabas that I intended to pay him a visit the same day.

Whatever may be the extent of the deserts of Africa, we must not form any calculations respecting its population from those innumerable swarms of blacks which are found on the west, and which border all the coasts of the ocean, from the Canary Isles to the environs of the Cape of Good Hope. There is certainly no proportion to enable us to hazard even a conjecture; since by a trade approved by a few, and held in detestation by the greater number, the barbarous navigators of Europe have induced these negroes, by the most villainous attractions, to give up their prisoners, or those who are inferior to them in strength. As their wants increased, they have become inhuman and perfidious beings; the prince has sold his subjects; the mother has sold her son; and nature, as an accomplice, has rendered her prolific.

This disgusting and execrable traffic is, however, still unknown in the interior parts of the Continent. The desert is really a desert; and it is only at certain distances that one meets with a few hordes, that are not  
numerous,

numerous, and who live on the fruits of the earth, and the produce of their cattle. After finding one horde, one must travel a great way to find another. The heat of the climate, the dryness of the sands, the barrenness of the earth, a scarcity of water, rugged and rocky mountains, ferocious animals; and, besides these, the humour of the Hottentots, a little phlegmatic, and their cold temperament—are all obstacles to propagation. When a father has six children, it is accounted a phenomenon.

The country of the Gonaquas, into which I penetrated, did not therefore contain three thousand people, in an extent of thirty or forty leagues; and the horde of Haabas, which consisted at most of four hundred persons, including every age and sex, was accounted one of the most considerable in the nation.

These people did not resemble those degenerated and miserable Hottentots, who pine in the heart of the colonies, contemptible and despised inhabitants, who bear no marks of their ancient origin but an empty name; and who enjoy, only at the expence of their liberty, a little peace, purchased at a dear rate

rate, by the excessive labour to which they are subjected on the plantations ; and by the despotism of their chiefs, who are always sold to government. I had here an opportunity of admiring a free and brave people, valuing nothing but independence ; never obeying any impulse foreign to nature, and calculated only to destroy their magnanimous, free, and truly philanthropic character.

I had no intention of going among this respectable nation like a harrassed hunter, compelled by hunger and fatigue to stop at the first place where he can find a lodging. I had resolved to present myself there *in fiocchi*, with the most striking appearance, but such as might be equally honourable for me and for them.

I employed the whole morning in dressing and arranging my hair, which I loaded with powder, as if I had been going into the most elegant company. I combed my beard, and made it hang down in the most graceful manner possible. I had suffered it to grow a year ; not from any whim or caprice, as has been ridiculouly circulated throughout the world ; nor was it in imitation of those botanical

tanical travellers, who are mad after galls and fenna, as a punishment because I did not discover soon enough, or when I wished, such and such a diaphoretic plant, or such and such an imperceptible insect; but policy had made me prescribe this rule to myself, as a fundamental law. The length of my beard was owing neither to slovenliness nor neglect. The scrupulous cleanliness of the Dutch I delight in; and, for an American Creole, it is not a mere want, proceeding from custom; it is a pleasure. In my journeys I changed my linen and clothes three or four times a day; but the plan of suffering my beard to grow, was formed before I departed from the Cape. I had heard of the wars between the Caffres and the planters, and that the latter were detested by the savages; and as I expected to meet either the one or the other, it was highly necessary that I should give myself, by my external appearance, as well as by my manners and conduct, an air absolutely strange, to prove that I had no resemblance to the planters. This plan succeeded perfectly; for, among all the hordes through which I passed, I was received as an extraordinary being, and as a man of a new species.

My



My invincible dislike to tobacco and brandy, used both by the planters and the savages, added still to their astonishment. The idea of this favourable prepossession, which could not escape me, gave me fresh assurance, and even an intrepidity which procured me great enjoyments unknown to other travellers. Nothing could stop me; I marched forwards and presented myself without uneasiness; and thus might I have traversed all the centre of Africa, even to Barbary, without the least molestation, had not the earth, as I may say, rejected my steps. Thirst and cruel hunger will always be insurmountable barriers to those who may wish to attempt so bold and hazardous an undertaking.

My beard, then, was my principal safeguard; but it daily rendered me a service which was no less valuable: on a journey I took the precaution, when I washed it, to suffer it to imbibe as much water as it could contain; and, during the heat of the day, this was a refreshment for my face which afforded me much comfort and relief.

After arranging my hair, I dressed myself in the most magnificent manner I could. Among my hunting frocks I had one of a dark  
dark

dark brown colour, ornamented with steel buttons, cut facet-wise; this I made my dress of ceremony; as the rays of the sun, falling upon the different facets, would by their reflection form a splendour very proper for exciting the admiration of these savages. Under this frock I wore a white vest; and in place of boots I substituted a pair of nankeen drawers, which always appeared to me equally noble. In my wardrobe I had still a pair of European shoes, which I put on my feet; and I did not forget my large silver buckles, as they were by chance exceedingly brilliant. I wished much to have a gold-laced hat, but this I was obliged to do without; and, as my drawers rendered my set knee-buckles of no use, I made a clasp of them, with which I fixed to my hat, such as it was, a magnificent plume composed of ostrich's feathers that had their full length.

But how much was I pained for the furniture of my horse, which did not correspond with the ornaments of his master! Instead of that magnificent panther's skin which in France would have been accounted superb, and which was nothing in the eye of a savage, what a flaming figure would one of those

howfings of scarlet cloth, which trot regularly every week from Paris to Poissy, have made! So true it is, that the rarity of objects forms all their value, at the same time that it constitutes their merit.

Having hinted to my faithful Klaas that he should mount on horseback with me, and serve me as groom, he had arranged himself in the best manner possible: but being desirous that he might appear with some distinction, I gave him an old pair of breeches, which he did not put on without assuming an air of vanity, which at the same time announced the pleasure this treat gave him, and the importance he received from such a decoration.

Every thing being ready for my departure, I dispatched two of my hunters with their fuses to inform the horde of my approach: and having breakfasted soon after, I suspended my poniard from a button-hole of my vest; put a pair of pistols into my girdle; and another pair, with my double-barrelled fusée, at the bow of my saddle; and instantly mounted my horse. Klaas, who carried my carabine did the same; and followed me, leading with him my four dogs. He was followed, in his turn, by four hunters,

ters, escorting one of my people, who was appointed to carry a box containing two red handkerchiefs, some copper rings, knives, pieces of steel for tinder-boxes, and some other presents which I intended to give to the horde. Amiroo marched at our head, to direct us in the proper way.

We first advanced along the banks of the river, going against its current for near an hour; after which Amiroo made us quit it, and conducted us between two high mountains, in a narrow defile, the length and windings of which were not less than two leagues. At the extremity of this valley, having returned to within a few paces of the river, the country opened before us; and from this spot pointing out with his finger a small eminence upon which I observed a kraal, our guide informed us that we should there find Haabas. It was still about ten gun shots distant from us. The road indeed had been longer than I expected; for we employed full three hours in this march. When I was within two hundred paces of the horde, I discharged both my shot, and ordered my four hunters to do the same. The two others, whom I had sent before, returned our salute, by dis-

C 2

charging

charging theirs; and this was to the whole horde the signal for a general shout of joy. I shall not make any reflections upon this affecting scene: the tender reader will share in the soft emotions of my heart; and prefer a true relation, however simple it may be. I saw all these people come forth from their tents, and form themselves into small bodies; but, in proportion as I approached, the women, the young girls, and children, all disappeared, and returned to their different huts. The men, who alone remained with their chief at their head, came to meet me; upon which I dismounted, and repeating the words *tabè tabè* to Haabas, I took the old man by the hand, which I squeezed in mine. He returned my salute with every effusion of a grateful heart; and seemed deeply affected by this mark of honour, which was principally conferred upon him. I was received with the same ceremonial by all the rest of the men; except that, suppressing through respect the sign of the hand, they substituted in its room that of bowing the head; and that, in pronouncing *tabè*, they accompanied this word with a more sensible clapping with the tongue.

Each in particular examined me with the utmost attention, even to the minutest part of my dress: every thing attracted their looks. Haabas himself, who had never seen me in my camp but in an undress, or in my hunting equipage, seemed astonished at my strange attire: I imagined that he shewed me much more deference than usual, and that he assumed a more respectful air as he passed me.

I had dismounted under the shade of a large tree, to which they came to compliment me; but I remained there only a few minutes to refresh myself. It was a real festival to me to contemplate this interesting horde, to which I advanced escorted by my whole troop; and as I passed before one of the huts, which like those of the Hottentots have only a very low entrance, the mistress of it, who at first made her appearance to survey me at a distance, immediately retired; so that I was obliged every moment to stoop, in order to examine the inside. It was a very curious spectacle to see these brown visages motionless, and as it were fixed to the wall, in the back part of the hut, exhibiting every where the appearance

of so many portraits in shade. I ought to have left my card with each of these ladies, for I was not received by any of them.

By little and little they became however more familiar, and I at length saw myself surrounded by them. They presented me milk on all sides; but Narina was not yet among the number of these curious females. Having enquired for her, some of them ran to fetch her; and she arrived soon after, bringing a basket of goats milk, quite warm, which she hastened to present to me. I drank some of it, in preference to that offered by the rest; both on account of the natural graces which she displayed in giving it, and of the care she had taken to make the vessel clean, which was far from being the case with the rest.

All these women, dressed in their richest attire, fresh greased and *boughoued*, and having their faces painted in a hundred different ways, sufficiently shewed what noise the news of my arrival had made in the horde, and the singular respect which they entertained for a stranger. Narina had adorned herself with the presents I had given her; but I observed, with no little surprise, that she  
had

had not followed the etiquette of her companions, and that she had abstained from her unctions. She knew how much this refinement in her dress disgusted me; and, whatever such a sacrifice might have cost her, she had submitted to it in order to please me. She introduced me to her sister, who appeared pretty; but whether it was that prepossession had blinded me, or that I was offended by the smell of her ointments, I did not find in her the same attractions as in Narina, nor did she excite the smallest emotion in my breast.

When I arrived at the habitation of Haabas, he shewed me his wife, who had nothing to distinguish her from the rest; and I found here, as is often the case elsewhere, that the commandant's lady was old and ugly enough. This however did not prevent me from presenting her, like a polite courtier, with a red handkerchief; which she accepted without ceremony, and immediately bound round her head. To this present I added a knife, and a piece of steel for striking fire with a flint; but as I had a great desire to know her taste, and was very glad



to see a savage female embarrassed respecting the choice of her dress, I shewed her my whole package of glass-ware, begging her to select whatever might please her most. Upon this occasion I did not enjoy the satisfaction which I expected; for she laid her hands, without hesitating a moment, upon some red and white necklaces; the other colours, she said, being too like her skin, would produce no effect, and were besides not at all agreeable to her taste. I have always remarked that the savages in general set very little value upon black or blue. I gave her also some large brass wire, for two pair of bracelets; and it appeared to me that she esteemed this article above all the rest.

The rest of the women did not see these presents without envy. They lifted up their hands with ecstasy; and in their admiration declared, with a loud voice, that the spouse of Haabas was the happiest of women, and the most magnificent in jewels that ever they had seen in all the hordes of the Gonaqua nation.

I then distributed the remainder of the glass beads which I had brought with me;  
and

and I candidly confess I manœuvred in such a manner as that the youngest and prettiest might have the largest share.

To the men I gave knives, tinder-boxes, and rolls of tobacco. My intention in visiting this horde personally was, that all the families which composed it might partake in my bounty; and the package I brought along with me was pretty considerable.

Haabas having begged me, in the name of several infirm old men who were not able to go abroad, to follow him, and pay them a visit, I readily consented to this request, and we entered their huts: they were all attended by children of eight or ten years of age, entrusted with the care of giving them their food, and of rendering them all those services which are necessary to the debility of years. I was very much struck with this respectable institution among these savage people, and I fully testified my approbation of it to my conductor. Though these old men, for the most part, were confined only by their great age, and not by those infirmities which are the usual attendants of people in civilized nations, I remarked with no little surprise that their hair was not white,  
and

and that it scarcely began to turn grey at the extremities.

I was next conducted to a hut entirely separated from the rest, which contained a horrid spectacle—a miserable wretch covered with ulcers from head to foot. Having stooped in order to enter, the infectious smell that proceeded from the hut made me start back with horror. This poor creature had lain here for more than a year, without any one daring to approach him; so much did they dread being infected by this disorder, which was accounted contagious: his wife indeed, and two of his children, had died about two months before. His food was thrown to him at the entrance of his habitation; or rather tomb; for to me he appeared to be no longer a living being. His situation, which was truly deplorable, incited my pity; for he had long remained stretched out amidst his own filth and ordure: and I was extremely sorry that I could not by some efficacious remedy afford him relief.

In vain did I remember that at Surinam we gathered ourselves the balm of Copahu, and that of Racassir, which I believe is the Tolu of the apothecaries shops; and that  
with

with this assistance alone we easily cured our negroes. But this was of no avail here: Africa did not produce any of these salutary plants; or at least, if it did, I knew not in what place to search for them. I however thought of a method which, if it should not cure his evils, would at least suspend them for a little.

I began therefore by bidding these savages be perfectly easy; assuring them that the disorder was not infectious, and that it could not be communicated by coming into immediate contact with the diseased person, much less by the air that surrounded him. To persuade them the more to believe me, I confidently told them that I was well acquainted with the disease: for without this precaution the plan I had formed to relieve him would have been in great danger of miscarrying; as an invincible prejudice made them all dread an epidemical distemper.

I told them, then, that it would be proper to anoint the whole body of the patient with mutton fat melted; that this harmless remedy would restore to his parched skin a little of its suppleness, and would at least enable him to move his limbs with ease.

I or-

I ordered also several mats to be given him, begging him to endeavour to draw them under him; and, weak as he was, he succeeded according to my wish. I next proposed that a new hut should be erected for him, and that he should be transported thither. This advice was received with acclamations by all present; and, that their benevolent ardour might not have time to cool, both I and my people put our hands to the labour: and the hut was soon finished, and in a condition to receive the sick man.

I always imagined that this man had been attacked by that destructive scourge which poisons the sources of life and destroys pleasure by pleasure itself. Though strangers to this scourge, as well as to the Hottentots of the Cape, who know it well, I thought it might have been gradually conveyed to the Gonaquas, by passing from one to another. A journey, or some fatal connection, had undoubtedly caused the misfortune of this poor wretch.

When the hut was ready, he was carried out, extended upon mats. He was then conveyed to a place near his new habitation, and the old one was demolished; whilst I was  
con-

considered as a beneficent god by these good savages. With what anxiety did they follow the unfortunate patient, with their eyes fixed sometimes upon me, and sometimes upon the miserable wretch of whose cure they had already conceived great hopes! for that powerful balm of the heart beamed on all their countenances and doubled their tender compassion. With what eagerness did I see them all flock round me, and pity the sufferings of their brother! and the women, above all, implore success to my skill, that I might if possible give some relaxation to his punishment, and restore him to life!

He was now become like a skeleton, covered with a shrivelled and dry skin, through which appeared some parts of his bones, in the legs, arms, sides, and reins; all his joints were prodigiously swelled; and the worms, by anticipation, were devouring him all over.

After the friction I had ordered, he was carried into his tent. I then recommended him to the care and attention of the whole horde; and begged that they would give him nothing to feed upon but milk.

I doubt

I doubt much whether this assistance was sufficient to relieve him: unfortunately my skill extended no farther; and, being firmly persuaded that his death was inevitable, I thought that to hasten it would be the greatest service that could be done to him. If I have prolonged his miserable existence for a few days, the cruellest of his enemies could not have done more.

When I returned to the habitation of Haabas, his wife presented me with some milk to refresh me; and I found that a sheep had been killed to entertain me and my people.

I ordered a few steaks to be broiled on some coals before the hut; but the remembrance of the horrid spectacle which I had seen so haunted my imagination, that it entirely deprived me of my appetite. Fearing however that these savages might think I was disgusted with their food, which would have cruelly mortified them, I forced myself to eat a little. From the place where I sat, through the circle that surrounded me, I saw my people, who were less delicate than their master, regaling themselves on pieces which had been distributed among them,

them, and amusing themselves as if they had been at a wedding.

When the repast was finished, no time remained but what was necessary for me to return before night. Taking leave therefore of my good neighbours, after many times repeating *tabè*, I mounted my horse. I was followed by almost the whole of the horde: but my time becoming every moment shorter, I made use of my spurs; and in less than an hour Klaas and I reached our camp. The rest of my people arrived much later; for about a score of the Gonaquas, both men and women, attracted by curiosity, had accompanied them. Upon any other occasion this visit might have displeased me; but at this time I had abundance of provisions, and twenty mouths more could not in any manner be burthensome.

The reader, without doubt, expects to find among the number of those who paid me this unexpected visit, the beautiful Narina. She indeed was; and, though it may appear surprizing, she concealed herself so well that I did not discover till next morning that she had arrived the evening before. The whole of the night was spent in dancing and singing; but, as I was unwilling to



deprive any one of a share in this party of pleasure which chance alone had formed, I did not attempt to interrupt them.

One of the surest means of preserving over savages that superiority which the presumptuous European haughtily assumes, is not, as is commonly believed, to intimidate them, and to employ threats and terror. This ridiculous plan must have been invented only by a rash fool, or a dastardly commander at the head of a numerous army, who took advantage of his force to impose despotic and severe laws. An instance to be found in some late voyages, is an evident proof that it is not by impetuosity, and the drawn sword, that mankind are to be civilized. The tragical end of a late enterprising navigator ought ever to be a striking lesson to those who may adopt such fatal maxims\*. I am convinced that one should never venture to ask from people in a state of nature, what would cost them too great a sacrifice to give; that it is prudent to lose a little in order to gain more; that it is only by complacency that one can insinuate oneself into their favour; and that the principal method of suc-

\* The author here seems to allude to the death of our unfortunate and ever-to-be-lamented captain Cook. T.

ceeding with them is first to gain their love. Entertaining such principles, it may readily be judged that I do not believe in *eaters of men*; and that there is no country so desert, or so little known, into which I would not penetrate without fear and without apprehension. Suspicion is the principal cause of the barbarity of savages, if we can call so the great care which they employ to remove from us, and even to destroy every thing that seems likely to endanger our safety or interrupt our repose.

Not being able to sleep during the whole night, I arose at break of day: but what was my astonishment when I perceived Narina! She seemed to have a more embarrassed air, and a more bashful look, than ordinary; and it was then only, as I have already said, that she confessed she had arrived the evening before. I reproached her in the severest terms for having thus concealed herself from me, and I begged her to tell me the reason; but, notwithstanding all I could say, she gave me no positive answer. Her silence in this respect was carried even to obstinacy. At length, as if afraid that she had raised her hopes too high, she became more timid in proportion as she guessed

the suspicions that I seemed to entertain on her account: this reserve made me love her more. The coffee was ready, and I gave her a share of my breakfast.

The whole of this day was spent likewise in dancing and merriment; but next morning the whole horde, attracted by curiosity, arrived at my camp. Some were coming, and others were departing; so that they crossed each other in all parts on the way. This spectacle appeared to me like the moving picture of a village festival, and I received them all with equal cordiality. Having enquired concerning my poor patient, I received an answer which gave me great pleasure. They told me that he never spoke of me but with tears of gratitude; that he still suffered very much; but that there had been a great change in his situation by the cleanliness I had procured him. He at least enjoyed the consolation of seeing his companions, and of discoursing with them; for, confiding in my advice, they no longer feared to enter his hut, or to approach him. Their visits, by engaging his thoughts, poured over his wounds a balm still more salutary than plants; and made him in some  
measure

measure forget his misfortunes. I doubt much whether he recovered after the desperate condition in which I saw him; but if it was possible for him to get better, I think this moral remedy must have contributed not a little towards his relief. Can there be any fate more cruel than that of seeing oneself deserted by one's friends and nearest relations, and banished from society like an abandoned carcase, the sight of which excites horror? Each related these particulars after his own manner, and accompanied them with thanks; which were the more sincere in proportion as these people were more nearly connected with my patient, either by the ties of blood or friendship.

The procession did not cease till the afternoon of the second day, when these worthy Gonaquas took leave of my camp to return to their horde. I could not help recommending my patient to them in the most earnest manner; and I told them that the care they might take of him would be the most flattering mark of esteem and respect they could confer upon me. I charged Narina in particular to carry him, in my name, a small provision of tobacco; I then gave a

few more presents to this young savage, and suffered her to depart.

I had been very little in the company of this girl; but the attachment I had conceived for her was so natural and simple, I was so much accustomed to her manners, and I found so much analogy between her disposition and mine, that I could scarcely persuade myself that our acquaintance was of so short a date, and that it was to terminate so soon. I thought I must admire her for the last time—but other cares and other views.

It is time to observe that the women of this country had not behaved with my people in the same manner as those of the river Gamtoos: they shewed the greatest reserve; and when the men departed, not one of them remained behind.

I confess that the visits of these people, who came in great bodies too often, and remained too long, began at length to displease me; for I feared, and with great reason, that some disturbance might arise around me, or that my people would acquire a taste for dissipation. They had all already begun to relax in their duty; hunting seemed to  
engage

engage their attention less than before; and almost every moment of their time was employed in dancing. The people entrusted with the care of keeping and feeding my cattle, seemed to perform this business with reluctance, and suffered them to stray wherever they thought proper; while others absented themselves during the night, and returned only in the morning to sleep. I thought, however, that it would be good policy in me to wink at these petty abuses, and to bring them all back gradually to their duty. The heat now began to grow insupportable; the sun, having passed the equator, darted his rays perpendicularly upon us, and scorched us so much that it would have been dangerous to expose ourselves in the hottest time of the day; and my tent, during these moments, was converted into a real stove, which I was obliged to abandon. These were sufficient motives to induce me to transport my penates to a place better shaded, under some thick grove; but I remembered the rendezvous where I appointed to meet the envoys I had sent to the Caffres. It might happen that, not finding me in their return at Koks-Kraal, they

might imagine either that some unforeseen misfortune had befallen me; or that, tired of waiting for them, I had resolved to depart, and continue my journey. Such a step would have thrown them into the utmost embarrassment; and, for my part, I was too much interested in the fate of my two friends to desert them; nor would all the birds of Africa have induced me to be guilty of so base an action. I resolved, therefore, to remain where I was till they should arrive; but I determined to bring back all my people to their former exercises, and I myself first gave the example.

I did not fail either, according to my usual custom, to devote a part of every evening to my journal; and it was here that I at length began to be acquainted with those differences which distinguish one Hottentot from another, and particularly the Gonaquas from all the other hordes I had before seen.

The kraal of Haabas, at the distance of about four hundred paces from the river Groot-Vis, was situated on the declivity of a little hill, which extended with an easy slope to the bottom of a chain of mountains, clothed with a forest of very large trees; a

small rivulet intersected it in the middle, and discharged itself into the river. All the huts, to the number of almost forty, built upon a space about six hundred feet square, formed several crescents, and were all connected together by small enclosures belonging to each. In these every different family shut up, in the day time, their calves and their lambs, which are not suffered to follow their mothers; and which suck only in the morning and evening, when the women milk the cows and the she goats. Besides these, there were three large enclosures well fenced round, which were destined for confining, during the night only, the whole flocks of the horde.

The huts, constructed like those of the Hot-tentots in the colonies, were eight or nine feet in diameter, and were covered with ox or sheep skins, but more commonly with mats. They had only one opening, very narrow and low; and it was in the middle of the hut that the family kindled their fire. The thick smoke with which these kennels were filled, and which had no other vent but the door, added to the stench which they always retain, would have stifled any European who might



have had the courage to remain in them two minutes : custom, however, renders all this supportable to these savages. Indeed they do not continue in them during the day, but on the approach of night each returns to his habitation, spreads out his mat, covers it with a sheep's skin, and sleeps as soundly upon it as if he lay on the softest down. When the nights are too cold, they use for a covering a skin like that upon which I lay ; the Gonaquas always procure them by barter. In the morning these beds are rolled up, and placed in a corner of the hut ; and, if the weather is fine, they expose them to the air and the sun. They then beat them, one after another, to shake off, not bugs as in Europe, but insects, and another kind of vermin no less troublesome, to which the excessive heat of the climate renders these savages very subject, and which they are not able to get rid of notwithstanding all their care and attention. When they have no pressing business to employ them, they make strict search for these vermin, which they destroy with their teeth : this appears to them the easiest and readiest method.

Some author, I know not who, has  
thought

thought proper to believe that these vermin are a ready resource for the Hottentots, and form part of their nourishment, and perhaps even a delicacy. Nothing can be more false than this ridiculous assertion: on the contrary, I can safely declare that they perform this office or ceremony with as much disgust as our women or servant maids perform it with contrary sensations with respect to our children.

I have before advanced that the Gonaqua women assume in their dress an air of elegance unknown to the Hottentots of the colonies. Their garments, however, do not differ in their shape, except that the former wear them larger; and that the apron of modesty, which they call *neuyp-krofs*, is wider, and descends almost to the knees. But it is in ornaments, I might rather say the embroidery lavished on their dresses, that the riches and magnificence upon which they pique themselves consist. It is, above all, in the arrangement of the apron that they display their art and their taste. The design, the distribution of the compartments, and the mixture of the colours, all are particularly attended to. The more their vestments  
are

are loaded with beads, the more they are esteemed; and they even ornament their bonnets with them. These bonnets, if possible, are made of the hide of the Zebra; because the white skin of that animal, intersected by brown or black stripes, gives a kind of relief to their physiognomy; and, as they themselves express it, adds something more enticing to their charms. Besides this, they are more or less sumptuous according to the beads and glass ornaments which they possess, and with which they encumber their bodies. They also make tissues, with which they adorn their legs, in the manner of half-boots. Those who cannot attain to this degree of magnificence, confine themselves, especially for the legs, to ornament them with the same reeds as those of which they make their mats, or with ox-hide cut into thongs, and beat into a round form by a mallet. It is this custom which has induced several travellers, copying their accounts from one another, to say that these people surround their arms and legs with the intestines of animals torn from their bodies as soon as they are killed; and that they devour these ornaments in proportion as they become putrid—

trid—a gross error, which deserves to be buried in oblivion with the works by which it has been propagated. It has sometimes happened, perhaps, that a Hottentot pressed by hunger, may have employed this resource as the only means of preserving his existence, and devoured both his thongs and his sandals, but, because the horrors of a siege have compelled civilized people to contend for the vilest food, must we conclude that uncivilized nations eat rags and nastiness?

At first, these bandages of leather and reeds with which the Hottentots surrounded their legs were only an indispensable preservative against the pricking of briars and thorns, and the biting of serpents, which abound in these regions of Africa; but luxury transforms into abuses the most useful inventions. In place of those pieces of skin which were so serviceable, the women have substituted beads, which, on account of their fragility, are not of long duration. Thus, among savages, as among the most enlightened nations, the wisest and the best combined institutions are at length perverted and corrupted. The luxury of the Hottentots, however ill understood it may appear, sufficiently

ciently announces that vanity belongs and is extended to all climates; and that, in spite even of nature, a woman is always a woman. The habit I was in of continually seeing the Hottentots, never reconciled me to their practice of painting their bodies in a thousand different ways. I always found it hideous and disgusting; nor do I know what charms they pretend to receive from this daubing, which is not only ridiculous, but even fetid. I have already given the figure of a *Hottentot lady* in all the luxury of her attire; and I can assure the reader that in this portrait there is nothing overcharged or exaggerated.

The two colours for which they shew the greatest fondness are red and black. The first is composed of a kind of ochry earth, which is found in several places of the country, and which they mix and dilute with grease: this earth has a great resemblance to brick-dust, or tiles reduced to powder. Their black is nothing else than soot, or the charcoal of tender wood. Some women indeed are contented with painting only the prominence of the cheeks; but in general they daub over their whole body, in compartments varied with a certain degree of symmetry;

fymmetry: and this part of their dress requires no small length of time.

These two colours so much admired by the Hottentots, are always perfumed with the powder of the *boughou*, which is not very agreeable to the smell of an European. A Hottentot, perhaps, would find our odours and essences no less insupportable; but the *boughou* has over our rouge and pastes the advantage of not being pernicious to the skin, of not attacking and injuring the lungs; and the female Hottentot, who is acquainted with neither amber, musk, nor benjamin, never knows what it is to be oppressed by vapours, spasms, and the headache.

The men never paint their faces; but I have often seen them use a preparation made of both colours mixed, to paint the upper lip as far as the nostrils; by which they enjoyed the advantage of continually inhaling the odour of the substance employed for this purpose. Young girls sometimes favour their lovers so far as to apply this paint for them under the nose; and on this point they shew a kind of coquetry which has a very powerful influence over the heart of a Hottentot novice.

novice. The reader, however, must not infer, from what I have said, that the Hottentot women pay so much attention to dress as to neglect those daily and useful occupations to which nature and their usages call them. I never heard them speak of it but on certain festivals which happen very rarely. Separated from Europe by an immensity of sea, and from the Dutch colonies by desert mountains and impassable rocks, too much communication with these people has not yet led them to the excesses of our depravation: on the contrary, when they have the happiness of being mothers, Nature addresses them in a different language; they assume, more than in any other country, a spirit suitable to their state, and readily give themselves up to those cares which she imperiously requires from them. As soon as a child is born, it never quits the back of its mother; she there fixes her dear burden by means of an apron, which keeps it close to her body; and another tied with thongs under the infant's thighs, supports it, and prevents it from gliding down. This second apron, formed, like the first, of the skin of some wild animal, is generally ornamented with beads;

beads ; and this is all that composes the furniture of the new-born child. Whether the mother goes to work or to a ball, and even though she dance, she never quits her child. The latter, of which nothing is seen but the head, never cries or squawls except when it has occasion to suck. The mother then turns it and draws it on one side ; nor is it necessary for her to untie it, except when she is advanced in years, or has had several children. Without displacing the one she carries, she conveys her breast to it under her arm, or throws it over her shoulder ; the child, satisfied, then ceases to cry ; and the nurse continues her dancing.

When the mother judges that it is in a condition to crawl and to assist itself, she places it on the ground before her hut ; and by force of creeping it learns the use of its limbs, and from day to day tries to stand upright : one attempt conducts to a second ; it becomes bold, and soon acquires sufficient strength to run and to follow its mother. This method, so simple and natural, is in my opinion much superior to our leading-strings, which crush and confine the breast. The disproportion between the strength of  
their



their legs and the weight of their bodies, which obliges our children to hang upon these too officious supporters, often lames them, at least ruins their health and disfigures them during the remainder of their days.

Never did I, either in America or Africa, meet with a lame or deformed person among the savages: to find these one must travel in Europe.

What still contributes to give the children of savages that agility and strength by which they are distinguished, is the care taken by their mothers to rub their bodies with mutton grease. The men themselves think it necessary to use this precaution, which restores to the skin that pliability which the impetuosity of the winds and the heat of the sun take from it.

Less favoured by the productions of the African climates than the Caribs are by those of America, the Hottentot does not, like the latter, enjoy the benefit of the *rocou*, which renders them a very essential service. It is well known that this tree produces a kind of fruit or pod which divides itself into two parts, and sheds about sixty grains,

grains, the pellicle of which is oily, and of a reddish colour. The Indian who always goes naked, never fails to rub himself with these every morning from head to foot; and by means of this unction he preserves himself from sun strokes, and from being stung by mosquitoes, and checks perspiration, generally too copious between the tropics.

When a Hottentot woman is ready to lie in, she is visited by an old woman of the horde, who attends her while in labour, and her delivery is always easy. The symphyfis and Cæsarian operation are not known among these savages. No consultations are ever held, nor do they debate whether they must save the child at the expence of the life of the mother; and should it happen, but this is extremely rare, that the life of both could not be preserved, a horrid distinction would certainly not order the mother to be assassinated, and the child would not be spared.

I enquired of the Hottentots themselves whether it was true that a mother who brings forth twins instantly destroys one of them. This crime against nature is indeed very rare, and these people revolt at the

idea of it; but it has its source, however incredible it may seem, in the tenderest love. It is a dread of not being able to nourish two children, or of seeing them both perish, that has induced some mothers to sacrifice one of them. Besides, the Gonaquas are exempt from this reproach; and I observed that they were not pleased with my question. But by what right dare we make it criminal in these savages to use this precaution, for which I have given at least a plausible motive, whilst in the heart of the most enlightened nations, notwithstanding the number of hospitals opened by benevolence, we every day see mothers unnatural enough to expose with their own hands, and to abandon in the streets, the innocent fruits of their womb?

It would therefore be an unjust calumny against these people, to give as a constant practice a few barbarous actions which they condemn, and which they belie so well by their conduct. In more than one horde I have met mothers who suckled twins, and who did not seem to be in the least embarrassed with them.

Travellers, however, have not hesitated

to maintain that this barbarous practice exists; and what Dr. Sparmann relates in his Voyage to the Cape\*, respecting the fate of children at the breast who lose their mothers, is equally void of foundation.

“ Another custom, no less horrid,” says he, “ which has not been hitherto remarked  
 “ by any one, but which I have been *fully*  
 “ *assured* exists amongst the Hottentots, is  
 “ that, if a mother happens to die, the child  
 “ at her breast is interred alive with her.  
 “ This very year, in the place where I was,  
 “ the following circumstance happened:—  
 “ A Hottentot woman having died on the  
 “ farm of an epidemical distemper, the rest  
 “ of the Hottentots, who thought that they  
 “ were not in a condition to educate the fe-  
 “ male child which she had left, or who  
 “ were unwilling to take the burden of it,  
 “ had wrapped it up, still alive, in a sheep’s  
 “ skin, in order to inter it with the deceased  
 “ mother; but some farmers in the neigh-  
 “ bourhood prevented them from accom-  
 “ plishing their design. My landlady, who  
 “ was already advanced in years, told me

\* Vol. ii. p. 73.

“ that she herself, about sixteen or seventeen  
“ years before, found in the quarter of  
“ Swellendam a Hottentot child wrapped  
“ up in skins, tied fast to a tree, near the  
“ place where its mother had been recently  
“ interred. Enough of life was still remain-  
“ ing in this child to be saved, and it was  
“ carried away by Mrs. Kock’s relations; but  
“ it died at the age of eight or nine. It re-  
“ sults from this instance, and from several  
“ others which I learned from the planters,”  
&c.

We must conclude, from the words of this botanist, that he saw nothing of what he relates, since he declares, as he does throughout his whole work, that he received his information from the planters. He must have been too much in their company to be ignorant how far one ought to depend on their memories or their judgement; and on this account he might have spared us the trouble of reading a great number of fables which ought to have been exploded. It is not by hearsay that we are to judge of people, or to compare them with others. In the most faithful and just relation how many circumstances escape us which would throw  
light

light upon facts, always ill understood when one has not been an eye witness! Was not the epidemical distemper of which he says the first mother died, a sufficient reason to alarm the Hottentots, and to make them remove both from the dead body and the child, through a dread of being infected; which, considering their prejudice, is a sufficient motive to induce them to abandon every thing in an instant, even their flocks, which are their only riches? With regard to the second child, found in the canton of Swellendam, the case perhaps might have been the same; and until a reasonable cause is assigned for this barbarity, I shall vindicate the character of the mildest and most affectionate people that I know. In short, such ridiculous tales respecting these savages would have been long since forgotten with the history of witches and apparitions, were there not old women to repeat them, and children to read them.

It would appear that some people take a delight in decrying uncivilized nations all over the globe, who are known to be the most peaceable and the most patient; whilst filled with esteem and respect for the east-

ern nations, the Chinese for example, they pass slightly over a custom prevalent among mothers at Peking of exposing in the streets during night all the children which they wish to get rid of, that at break of day the carriages and cattle as they pass may crush them to death, or that they may be devoured by the hogs. Certain travellers who have visited Asia inform us that the great lords in Thibet go on a pilgrimage to Putola, the residence of the Grand Lama, to procure some of the excrement of this sovereign high priest; and that they carry it about their necks in amulets, or sprinkle it like pepper over their food.

Has this filthy ceremony any thing more disgusting in it than that falsely ascribed to the Hottentots in the celebration of their marriages? Masters of ceremony, which they have not—or rather priests, with whom they are still less acquainted, are supposed to have the supernatural power of drenching from the urinary passage the bride and bridegroom, who, prostrated at the feet of the person who besprinkles them, devoutly receive the liquor, and carefully rub it over their whole bodies, without losing a single drop.

drop. The author whom I have already quoted is strongly inclined to believe all these rhapsodies on the simple relation of the planters, when he says that these marriage rites are not destitute of foundation; but that this custom is no longer practised except in the interior part of the *kraals*, and never in presence of the planters.

Kolben has spoken of this ceremony in the minutest manner; and he has even exposed it to the eyes of his readers in an engraving, in order to give it a kind of authenticity. Other ignorant writers have copied Kolben, and even the author of the French translation of Dr. Sparmann; to which he has been pleased to add, in order to complete the last volume, I know not what extract from *A New System of Geography*. I indeed never read any voyage to Africa in which the absurd reveries of Kolben have not been adopted. This plagiarism, which disgraces the work of a respectable writer, deserves no credit. The dreams of the sedentary traveller who wrote above eighty years ago, are there related word for word, not only respecting the marriage ceremony of the Hottentots, but also concerning their



reception into an order of chivalry, which terminates likewise by a general immerfion. I have dwelt too long on thefe details; but it is my duty to relate faithfully what I faw, and what conclufions I have thence formed.

The Hottentot women, as well as thofe of Europe, are fubject to periodical indispo- fitions; and all the circumftances attending them are abfolutely the fame. The wife or daughter of a Gonaqua, when ſhe perceives her fituation, immediately leaves the hut of her husband or parents, retires to ſome dif- tance from the horde, has no more commu- nication with them, conſtructs a kind of ha- bitation for herſelf, if it be cold, and re- mains ſhut up there, until, being purified by bathing, ſhe is in a condition to appear again in publick. As in ſuch circumftances the drefs of theſe ſavages is very ill calculated to conceal a woman's condition, ſhe would be expoſed to ſevere raillery if any one ſhould obſerve it: nothing more would be neceſ- ſary to inſpire her intended ſpouſe with diſ- guſt, which would terminate by a ſpeedy ſeparation. It is therefore a natural ſhame, founded upon a ſenſe of her own imperfec- tion, and a dread of diſpleaſing, that induces  
a woman

a woman to absent herself in this manner for several days: and this is one of those customs which might have been easily taken for a religious ceremony, by people who having observed it only superficially, did not see that such a conduct, mysterious in appearance, is at bottom only an act of decency and cleanliness.

Young women never have any intercourse with the men until they are capable of producing children. They are marriageable at the age of twelve or thirteen: and after that period, as soon as they meet with a young man agreeable to their taste, they are permitted by their parents to live with him.

In this country, where all are equal by their birth, provided they are males, all ranks are consequently equal, or rather there is no rank at all. Luxury and vanity, which eat up wealth, and make it experience so many changes, in other countries, are not known among these savages: confined to the simple wants of nature, the means by which they supply them not being exclusive, they may be, and indeed they are, employed by every one. All the combinations of pride for the prosperity of families, and the accumulation  
of

of perhaps ten fortunes in the same money chest, produce here no intrigues, disorder, or crimes. Parents having no reasons for opposing those sentiments of prepossession which lead a child towards one object rather than to another, all marriages being founded on a reciprocal affection, are always attended with happiness; and as, to preserve them, they know no other law but love, they have no other motive for dissolving them but indifference. These unions, formed by simple nature, are more lasting than might be expected amongst these shepherds; and their love for their children renders both the parties every day more and more necessary to one another.

The formality of these marriages consists then in a simple and sincere promise of living together as long as may be agreeable. When two young people enter into this engagement, they instantly become man and wife; and this alliance is certainly not solemnized by those ridiculous and filthy aspersions of which I have spoken. A few sheep, and sometimes an ox, are killed to celebrate this little festival: the parents give a few cattle to the young couple; and the latter construct a hut, and take possession of it the same day,

day, to live there together as long as love may preserve harmony between them: for, as I have said, if any difference arises in the family which cannot be reconciled but by a separation, it soon takes place. They quit one another; and each seeking a happier situation elsewhere, is at liberty to marry again. Established order requires that the common effects should be divided in an amicable manner: but should it happen that the husband, in quality of master, pretends to retain the whole, the wife on that account is never destitute of protectors and support; the family stand up in her defence, and sometimes the whole horde. Much disputing then ensues; the consequence is that they come to blows, and the stronger party give laws to the other.

The mother takes with her the young children, especially if they be daughters; the boys, if they be grown up, follow the father, and are always on his side.

These misfortunes, it must be confessed, are very rare; but what is no less worthy of remark, is, that in such cases, as well as in their other quarrels, there is no law, and no established custom, by which good order can  
be

be restored. We must consider as absurdities what Kolben has said respecting their courts of justice, their manner of proceeding in civil affairs, the superior council of the nation, their prisons, their publick assemblies, and in a word all those institutions which ill agree with the name of savage, since a people so governed would in nothing differ from us but in colour and climate. I never saw or heard that a quarrel ended by a murder; but if this misfortune should happen, and if the death be regretted, the family, exceedingly moderate in their vengeance, would be contented with the law of retribution. For so atrocious a crime the whole horde would pursue the assassin, and compel him to quit the country, if he escaped being put to death.

Polygamy is not at all repugnant to the sentiments of the Hottentots; but it is far from being generally established among them. They take as many wives as they choose; that is to say, in proportion to their constitution; and this generally reduces the number to one.

It is never, however, observed that one woman lives with two men; and the wisdom of nature, which was desirous that a father might be able to acknowledge his children,  
impressed

impressed on the heart of the Gonaquas an invincible abhorrence of this infamous prostitution. It shocks these people so much, that a husband, acquainted with the slightest act of infidelity in his spouse, may immediately put her to death, without running the risk of being punished for it.

It may be readily judged that this remark is liable to some exceptions; and the reader will recollect with what familiarity the first free Hottentots I met mixed among mine: but, being nearer the colony, example is a very powerful seducer; and I even confess that it would be difficult, among these savages, for the conjugal knot to resist the solicitations and coaxing of an European. A Hottentot woman, honoured by being overcome, looks upon her husband afterwards with a kind of haughtiness, and quits him with contempt. The latter on his side, soon becomes comforted, and suffers himself to be easily appeased by trifling presents: but even this resource is useless; and, as I have already said, in consequence of their primitive manners being corrupted, they are less susceptible of jealousy, and are far from experiencing its madness.

A Gonaqua man bestows much less attention on dress than the women. It has been said that in winter they wear their kross with the woolly side innermost, and that in hot weather they turn it. This indeed is possible, and very indifferent in itself; but it however does not prevent them from having one in summer absolutely free from wool, the preparation of which costs a great deal of trouble. I have remarked that the Gonaquas are taller than the Hottentots of the colonies, and that their krosses are made of calves skins. One of these skins is seldom sufficient; and they generally make it larger by adding to each side a piece which they stitch to it with thread made of intestines. This sewing is executed in the same manner as that of shoemakers; and, to form the holes, these savages employ an awl of iron, when they can find it; but, when they cannot, they use one made of bone: those made of the leg bone of an ostrich, which is the hardest they know, are those upon which they set the highest value. There are two methods of freeing a kross from hair: when the animal has been newly flayed, and while the skin is still fresh, they only roll it up with the hair inwards,  
and

and leave it in this state for two days, which are sufficient to produce a fermentation. When this begins, they tear off the hair, which almost drops of itself; and then, by rubbing, give the skin a kind of preparation. It is afterward left for a whole day entirely covered with leaves of the Hottentot fig-tree, well soaked and pounded; and when this operation is finished, the fibres, and all the fleshy parts that can be perceived, are scraped away; till at length, by force of rubbing it with mutton grease, the kross acquires all the softness and flexibility of woven cloth. It may be readily perceived that this process differs very little from those employed by furriers and tanners in Europe; but, with whatever ingenuity the Hottentots may prepare their furs and skins, they will never approach ours until they have passed through the hands of the perfumer.

If the skin be dry, and, whether it has been used or not, retains the hair; and if a Hottentot, for want of another, wishes to convert it into a kross for summer, this labour requires other care, and it becomes much more tedious and minute. With the rib bone of a sheep he forms a kind of chisel, which



which must be made as sharp as possible; and this instrument, which serves to detach the hair, must be managed with great precaution. It is not sufficient to shave the hair, it is necessary that it should be pulled out by the roots; and that it bring the epidermis along with it, without damaging the texture of the skin. This work of patience requires extraordinary skill and a great deal of time. A Gonaqua, I again repeat it, has no other clothes but his kross and his jackal; and he always goes bareheaded, unless the weather be rainy or cold: in such cases, he wears a cap made of leather. He ornaments his hair with a few glass beads, or affixes a plume of feathers to it. I have seen some who substituted, in the place of this decoration, small bits of leather cut into different forms; and others, when they kill small birds, blow up the bladder, and fasten it like a tuft over their foreheads.

All in general use sandals, which they tie with leather thongs: they ornament also, but with less profusion than the women, their legs and arms with ivory bracelets, the whiteness of which affords them much pleasure; but they do not however value them so highly

as those made of large brass wire. They take so much care of the latter, and scour them so often, that they become exceedingly brilliant, and retain a most beautiful polish.

They are remarkably fond of hunting; and in this exercise they display great dexterity. Besides gins and snares, which they place in convenient spots to catch large animals, they lie in wait for them also, attack them as soon as they appear, and kill them with their poisoned arrows, or their assagays. When an animal is wounded by the former, it instantly feels the effects of the poison, which coagulates its blood; and it often happens that an elephant, wounded in this manner, falls at the distance of twenty or thirty leagues from the place where it received the deadly blow. As soon as an animal expires, they are contented with cutting away all the flesh near the wound, which they consider as dangerous; but the rest sustains no injury from the force of the poison. I have often eat the flesh of animals killed in this manner, without experiencing the slightest inconvenience; but I must own that I would not run the same risque with respect to animals

which have retained the poison in their bodies for some time.

On the first view of their arrows, one would not suspect how destructive weapons they are. They will neither fly so far, nor are they so long, as those used by the Caribs in America; but even their smallness renders them so much the more dangerous, as it is impossible to perceive and follow them with the eye, and consequently to avoid them. The slightest wound which they make always proves mortal, if the poison reaches the blood, and if the flesh be torn. The surest remedy is to amputate the wounded part, if it be a limb; but if the wound be in the body, death is unavoidable.

These arrows are made of reeds, and very curiously formed. They are only eighteen inches, or at most two feet, in length; whereas those of the Caribs are six feet. Having rounded a small bone three or four inches in length, and less in diameter than the reed, these Hottentots thrust it into one of the ends of the arrow, but without fixing it; on this account, when the arrow penetrates any body, the rod may be drawn out, but the bone remains in the wound; because it is  
armed

armed with a small iron hook, placed on one of its sides in such a manner, that by its resistance, and the new lacerations it occasions in the flesh, it renders useless all those means which art might devise to extract it. This bone also is dipped in a poison which has the consistence of mastich; and they often add to its point a small triangular bit of iron well sharpened, which renders the weapon still more terrible.

Each horde have a peculiar method of composing their poisons, according to the different milky plants which grow in their neighbourhood, the dangerous juice of which they extract. They procure some also from certain kinds of serpents; and these, for their activity, are those which are most sought after by these savages, and which they prefer to all others, especially in their expeditions and combats. It is not possible to draw any certain information from them respecting their manner of preparing that poison which they extract from serpents: it is a secret which they so carefully conceal, that all I can affirm concerning it is, that it operates very speedily; and I often had occasion to make experiments with it. I am however

inclined to think that, as it grows old, this poison loses much of its strength, notwithstanding the trial made of it in the king's garden at Paris, the success of which may be warranted. But these poisons, as I have already said, do not resemble one another: that which Mr. Condamine brought with him, on his return from Peru, does not establish a law for Africa. Besides, it is an experiment which might easily be repeated in the presence of scientific men; since I have in my collection, besides other arms, a quiver filled with these arrows, which I took from one of the Boshmen Hottentots, during an action in which I saved my own life at the expence of his.

Their bows are proportioned to their arrows, and are not above two feet and a half, or at most three feet, in length: the string is formed of intestines.

The assagay is generally a very feeble weapon in the hands of a Hottentot; but, besides this, as its length renders it not dangerous, for it may be seen cleaving the air, it is not difficult to avoid it. Beyond the distance of forty paces, the person who darts it is not sure of his aim, although the Hotten-

tots are able to throw it much farther: it is only in a close engagement that it can be of any utility. It has the same shape as a lance in every other country; but as it is intended to be thrown at the enemy, or at animals, the wood of those used in Africa is much lighter and weaker, and continues diminishing in thickness to the extremity opposite to the iron point.

The use of these weapons is very ill understood; for the warrior who wields them with the greatest skill is also the soonest disarmed. The Gonaquas, and all the other Hottentots, never carry but one; and the embarrassment which they generally cause, as well as the little advantage they derive from them, sufficiently prove that they are not their favourite means of defence; which may lead us to conclude that bows and arrows are the natural and proper arms of a Hottentot. I have seen some of them that displayed much address in throwing the assagay; but the greater part of them are entirely unacquainted with it. The case however is not the same with the Caffres, who have no other weapons; but of these I shall speak hereafter.

Such are the means for attacking or defending used by some of the savage nations of Africa. They may perhaps incite the indignation of an European, and induce him to tax these people with barbarity; but it must be remembered that the Europeans, before they employed that terrible thunder which in a moment causes so much devastation and ruin, had no other arms but those made of steel, and knew also the method of sending a double death to the enemy.

The Hottentots have not the least notion of the elements of agriculture; they neither sow nor plant, nor do they ever reap any crop. All that Kolben has said respecting their manner of cultivating the earth, of gathering in their grain, and of churning their butter, concerns the planters only, and the Hottentots in their service. The savages drink their milk as nature gives it; and if they conceived a taste for agriculture, tobacco and the vine would undoubtedly be the principal objects of their attention: for smoking and drinking are their ruling pleasures; and all, whether old or young, married or unmarried, are much addicted to both.

When

When they choofe to give themselves the trouble, they make an intoxicating liquor, composed of honey and a certain root, which they suffer to ferment in a proper quantity of water. This liquor, which is a kind of hydromel, is not their usual beverage, nor do they ever keep a stock of it by them. Whatever they have, they drink all at once, and frequently regale themselves in this manner at certain periods.

They smoke the leaves of a plant which they name *dagha*, and not *daka*, as some authors have written. This plant is not indigenous; it is the hemp of Europe. It is cultivated by some of the planters; and when they have dried the leaves, they sell them to the Hottentots, or exchange them for oxen. There are some of the savages who prefer these leaves to tobacco; but the greater part of them are fond of mixing both together.

They set less value on the pipes brought from Europe than on those which they fabricate themselves; the former appear to them to be too small. For making these pipes they employ the bamboo reed, baked earth, or a soft kind of stone, which they



cut and scoop out to a considerable depth, without breaking it. They generally make them very large; for the more they are capable of containing, the more valuable they are. I have seen some, the shanks of which had an orifice of more than an inch in diameter.

None of the men among the Gonaquas give themselves up peculiarly to any kind of labour, in order to gratify the whims of others. The woman who wishes to repose softly, makes her own mats; the want of a dress forms a tailor; and the hunter who is desirous of having sure weapons, depends only upon those which he forges himself: in short a lover is the sole architect of the hut in which he intends to conceal the charms of his female companion.

I must confess that more intelligence and more art may be found among other nations. The only utensils known in this country are formed of a kind of earthen ware exceedingly brittle, and are almost all shaped alike. The Gonaquas seldom boil their meat, as they prefer it roasted or broiled. Their pottery is destined for the purpose of melting grease, which they afterwards preserve in calabashes,

libashes, bags made of sheep's skins, or in bladders.

Though they rear abundance of sheep and oxen, they seldom kill the latter, unless some accident happens to them, or old age has rendered them unfit for service. Their principal nourishment, therefore, is the milk of their ewes and cows; besides which, they have the produce of their hunting excursions; and from time to time they kill a sheep. To fatten their animals they employ a process, which, though not practised in Europe, is no less efficacious; and has this peculiar advantage, that it requires no care. They bruise, between two flat stones, those parts which we deprive them of by the knife; and when thus compressed they acquire in time a prodigious bulk, and become a most delicate morsel, when they have resolved to sacrifice the animal.

The custom of breeding oxen for war is not practised in this part of Africa. I observed no vestige of it in any of those places through which I passed. It is peculiar to the Grand Nimiquas; and I shall speak of it when I come to give an account of these people. The oxen which the Hottentots rear

rear are used only in transporting their baggage, when they quit one place in order to establish themselves in another; the remainder are destined for procuring them necessaries by barter.

Those oxen which they intend for carrying burdens must be broke and trained very early to this service; otherwise they would become absolutely untractable. On this account, when the animal is still young, they pierce the cartilage which separates the nostrils, and thrust through the hole a piece of stick about eight or ten inches in length, and almost an inch in diameter. To fix this stick, and to prevent it from dropping, they secure it with a leathern thong, which is fastened to both its ends. This curb, which serves to stop and restrain the animal, is left in this position as long as it continues in life. When the ox has attained to its full strength, or nearly so, they begin by accustoming it to endure a leathern girth, which they bind closer from time to time, without incommoding it; and they carry this to such a degree, that any other animal with which the same precautions might not be taken, would be stifled by it, and instantly perish.

Some

Some light burthens are then placed upon it, such as hides, mats, &c; and thus, by gradually and insensibly increasing the load, they render it fit to carry and retain on its back the weight of three hundred pounds and more; which is in nowise troublesome to it when on a journey.

Their manner of loading an ox is very simple. A man placing himself before the animal, lays hold of the thong affixed to the small stick that passes through its nostrils; and this method renders the most furious calm and peaceable. Some skins are thrown over its back, to prevent it from being hurt; and in proportion as they lay on the effects which are to compose the load, two robust Hottentots, standing one on each side, arrange and secure them by a leather girth, which goes several times round by passing under the animal's belly. These girths are often above twenty yards in length; and, to fasten them more closely each time they pass round the load, these men press their knees against the animal's sides; while one sees, with no less astonishment than pain, the poor brute, with its belly reduced to less than its ordinary size, endure this torture, and march  
along

along with the utmost compofure. The Hottentots, who are nor acquainted with the ufe of horfes, often mount thefe oxen; and even in the colonies they are fometimes employed by the inhabitants for the fame purpofe. The motion of an ox is very gentle, efpecially when it trots; and I have feen fome, which, trained entirely for riding, were not inferior in fpeed to the fleeteft horfe.

The task of milking the cows and the ewes belongs to the women: and, as they never beat or torment them, they are furprifingly tractable; it is never neceffary to tie them. It muft be obferved that a cow in Africa never gives milk when her calf dies, or is feparated from her: the Hottentots, therefore, carefully avoid thefe misfortunes, which would render the mother ufelefs, and leffen their moft valuable refource. The inftinct which prompts the cow to retain her milk until her calf has fucked her, is no lefs remarkable; but on thefe occasions the Hottentots employ an eafy method, generally practifed, however difguffing it may be. Whilft a woman, fquatted down, holds the animal's teat, another blows with great violence into her vagina; her belly then fwells prodigioufly,

prodigiously, so that she can no longer keep back her milk, but suffers it to flow in abundance.

If a calf happens to die, they preserve its skin very carefully, and with much address deceive the simple instinct of nature. They wrap it round the body of another calf; and, seduced by this artifice, the mother continues to yield her milk: but this stratagem seldom succeeds beyond the space of a month. It is a real loss to a proprietor when a calf dies; for, if it lives, the cow never ceases to give milk till within six weeks of her bringing forth again.

The African cows are absolutely the same species as those of Europe, and differ in no circumstance whatever; but, according as the different cantons are good or bad, they appear fatter or leaner. In general they give very little milk; those which furnish three or four pints a day are extraordinary phenomena. It appears that milk, one of the most agreeable gifts of nature, becomes scarcer, and dries up almost entirely, the more one approaches the warmest countries. I remember that at Surinam, not far from the Line, a cow which gave three or four pints  
was

was accounted a wonder: what still serves to confirm the truth of my assertion is, that even at the Cape, in the rainy season, when the atmosphere is coolest, more milk is obtained; and the contrary is the case when the warm weather returns. It is then also that the season most dangerous for these animals commences; and when they are subject to four destructive maladies, which occasion dreadful devastation among the herds.

The first, called at the Cape *lam-sikte*, is a real palsy, which comes on all of a sudden; and though fat, and to appearance in perfect health, these animals are obliged to remain in a lying posture, and they generally die in fifteen days. As soon as the distemper appears, those which are still free from the infection are sent out of the country; and, as there is no remedy for this plague, the planters destroy those attacked by it; and this they do with the more readiness, as they have no aversion to eat the diseased flesh: above all, they make no difficulty in giving it to their slaves and Hottentots, who in their taste are still less delicate.

Another disease, the *tong-sikte*, is a prodigious swelling of the tongue, which then  
fills

fills the whole mouth and throat; and the animal is every moment in danger of being choaked. This disorder is more terrible in its consequences than the other, though it is not incurable; but the remedy for it is so little known, and so badly administered, that it seldom operates with success. Those, therefore, which appear to be in a desperate situation, are killed, in order that their flesh and skins may not be lost.

The *klaw-sikte* attacks the feet of oxen, causes them to swell prodigiously, and often produces a suppuration: the hoof drops off; and when the animal walks, if one sees it behind, it seems as if it wore slippers. It may readily be supposed that, while in such a situation, great care is taken not to remove it from its place. It is, indeed, suffered to remain at rest as long as the malady continues: it is an inconvenience not attended with any danger, and which terminates generally in a fortnight.

This, however, is not the case with respect to the *spong-sikte*, a terrible scourge among horned cattle, and very alarming even for those of the hordes. This plague, which spares nothing, causes speedy destruction;



tion ; and happy is he who does not lose by it the half of his herd. It is a kind of leprosy, that may be communicated in an instant ; and the flesh of such animals as are attacked by it, swells in an extraordinary manner, and grows spongy and livid. One would say that it was bruised, and in a state of decomposition : it becomes filled with a reddish viscous humour ; and is so disgusting, that even dogs will not approach it. As soon as it is suspected that the first symptoms of this pestilence have appeared, if care has not been taken to remove those animals which are not yet infected, whatever health or strength they may enjoy, they cannot escape it.

Such are the principal disorders which, by their periodical ravages, establish between the increase and the mortality of the cattle of Africa, a balance that obstructs their prosperity, and without which these pastoral people, very temperate in their manner of living, would soon become rich and powerful.

The sheep which the savages breed in the eastern parts are of a species known under the name of the *Cape sheep*. They have acquired

quired considerable reputation from the size of their tails; but this has been greatly exaggerated: their ordinary weight is not above four or five pounds. During my residence at the Cape Town, one of these animals was carried from house to house as a wonder; and yet its tail, though much admired, did not weigh more than nine pounds and a half. It is absolutely nothing else but a lump of fat, which has this peculiarity, that when melted it never acquires the consistency of that found in other parts of the animal; it is a kind of congealed oil, which the Hottentots prefer to any other for their unctions, and for applying that powder which they call *boughou*. The planters employ it also in frying certain kinds of meat. When mixed with other greasy substances, it becomes hard like butter, and is substituted for it, especially in such cantons of the colony as are too dry for breeding cows. On this account it is called, in the fertile parts of the country, in pleasantry and by way of derision, the butter of such or such a place: at the Cape, for example, it is called the butter of *Swart-land*, a dry canton in which milk is exceedingly scarce.

The dry and burnt parts are fit only for goats, which are always of a fine breed. Their size varies according to the different cantons; but, in general, they are every where excellent, and produce as much milk as the cows. They bring forth young twice a year, like sheep; the latter for the most part bring two at a time; but the goats three, and very often four.

The Hottentots are not acquainted with hogs, and even the European planters disdain to breed them. I have however seen some of them in particular cantons, where they are suffered to multiply and to live unconfined. To catch them one must pursue them and kill them with a fufee.

Poultry are not esteemed among the Hottentots; besides, they could not rear them, were they desirous to do it; for, as they never sow, they have no kind of grain.

The roots which they principally make use of, are confined to a very small number. They never boil them, as they think them better when eat raw; and indeed experience convinced me that they are not in the wrong.

That which I preferred, known under the Hottentot name of *kamero*, is shaped like a radish,

radish, and is as large as a melon. It has a most sweet and agreeable taste, and is excellent for allaying thirst; a wonderful precaution of nature, in a scorching climate, where one is in danger of perishing at every step; and where, at certain seasons, there is not a single spring at which one could drink. Though very common, this root is not easily found, because at the period of its perfect maturity, its leaves becoming withered and dry, drop off; and to procure it one must have remarked the spot before. But by being a little accustomed to the country, people may soon learn to distinguish the places where it chiefly grows.

When oppressed by the heat and fatigues of the day, having my mouth and throat parched, and my body covered with sweat and dust, panting for breath, deprived of the friendly shade, and scarcely able to support my own weight, I wished to find some infectious marsh; and in that all my vows were centered—when my vain researches, and the unceasing intensity of the sun, had at length deprived me of all hopes—how often then did I congratulate myself upon a precaution which more than one ele-

gant Midas, from relations published without my consent, have turned into ridicule, as well as my cock; because, among other silly things, for example, finding always water in the Seine, they cannot conceive why that river does not extend to the desarts of Africa, but confines its course to a very small portion of the earth; and how one can die of thirst or hunger, when the markets in the capital are every where supplied and abound with provisions of all kinds—I say how much did I congratulate myself on possessing in my domestic animals, in appearance the most useles, so excellent guards, and friends so necessary to my preservation?

In these critical moments my faithful Kees never quitted my steps; and when we left our carriages, even for a moment, the force of his instinct soon conducted him to some of these plants: but as the tuft which no longer existed rendered all his tumbling useles, he dug up the earth with his fore paws. This resource however would have been far from satisfying his impatient avidity, had I not gone to his assistance with my poniard; and on these occasions we honestly shared the valuable fruit which he discovered.

I found

I found an equal relief in two other roots of the size of one's finger, but exceedingly long. These roots were sweet and tender; and, as they had something of the smell of fennel and anise, I gave them the preference whenever I was so fortunate as to find them: they are to be met with in the colonies, where they are known, one under the name of *anys-wortel*, and the other under that of *vinkel-wortel*.

In the rocky cantons there grows a kind of potatoe, which the savages call *kaa-nap*: it is of an irregular figure, and contains a milky juice exceedingly sweet. To extract the milk nothing more is necessary but to suck this kind of pulp. I often tried to boil it, but I always found it of less value, as well as all the rest, because too quick a decomposition of the delicate substance which evaporates, changes its nature, and leaves what remains very insipid. Some other roots, when roasted under the ashes like chestnuts, approached very near to them in taste. The wild fruits of this country are very few in number. I never found any thing of the kind but a few shrubs, the berries of which were so bad that they could

have tempted none but children: thus ours, in the heart of the country, regale themselves nobly on the produce of the hedges that surround our highways. Some of these wild fruits have a purgative quality, and are good for nothing else.

Though unacquainted with more than one interesting part of natural history, I should have thought myself highly culpable in climates so remote, and countries never before traversed, to neglect any occasion of studying those new objects with which I saw myself continually surrounded. I confess that I was entirely ignorant of botany; but I did not however fail to make some researches relating to that science, which, though it neither speaks to the heart, nor conveys any sentiment to the mind, has for its object beneficence, and a desire of being useful to man. When I found any bulbous plants or shrubs, the flowers and fruits of which attracted my attention, I was very careful to get possession of them, and I preserved also the seeds. In my various encampments I had even improved so much, that I was capable of comparing different vegetable productions, and of observing the  
relation

relation which they bore one to another. This study, which I found very agreeable, gave me an opportunity of changing my amusements; and on returning from one of my excursions to the Cape Town I had formed a collection so valuable, that Mr. Percheron, the French agent at the Cape, sent it, in my name, for the king's garden, addressed to that respectable family whose name I dare not mention; but whom Nature, by revealing to them her sweetest secrets, and entrusting them with the particular care of her hidden treasures, hath ranked among her dearest favourites. These plants however did not reach the place of their destination: I was informed by the French agent that the vessel on board which they were, perished at sea. I was more fortunate with regard to the drawings I had made, and which I brought along with me. An eminent botanist assured me that he was unacquainted with the greater part of the plants which they represented. I shall lay them before the public hereafter.

I now return to details which are easier and within my reach, I mean those respecting my dear Gonaquas.

By only looking at these savages, it would



be difficult to guess their age. Old people indeed appear wrinkled, and the extremities of their hair are a little greyish, but it never turns white entirely; and I presume that they are very old at seventy.

These savages measure the year by the epochs of drought and rainy weather. This division is common to all the inhabitants of the tropical regions, and it is subdivided into moons; but they never count the days if they exceed ten, that is to say the number of their fingers. Beyond that, they mark the day or the time by some remarkable epoch; for example, an extraordinary storm, an elephant killed, an infectious distemper among the cattle, an emigration, &c. The different parts of the day they distinguish by the course of the sun; and they will tell you, pointing with their finger, he was *there* when I departed, and *here* when I arrived. This method is far from being exact; but, notwithstanding its want of precision, it is almost sufficient for these people, who having no appointments of gallantry, no law-suits to attend, no perfidies to commit, no scandal to propagate, no occasion meanly to cringe before ignorant patrons, and no new play to damn, calmly behold

behold the fun finish his course, and are under very little uneasiness whether twenty thousand clocks bring misery to one and happiness to another.

When the Hottentots are sick, besides the ligatures already mentioned, they have recourse to some medicinal plants with which their usual practice makes them acquainted. There are some men among them of more knowledge than others in this respect, and whom they consult; but as there is no science more occult than medicine, and as internal disorders do not speak to the eyes in a striking manner, they are very much embarrassed how to treat them; they however impose as much as we upon some victims by their grimace, and clearly demonstrate, after the patient is dead, that his disease was incurable. They are more successful in dressing and treating wounds, and even in reducing luxations or fractures: it is extremely rare to see a lame Hottentot.

A sense of delicacy in these savages makes them keep themselves separate from others when they are sick. They are then seldom seen, and it would appear that they are ashamed of having lost their health. It indeed never enters the thoughts of a Hottentot

tot to expose himself in public for the purpose of exciting pity and procuring relief; this is a forced method, but useless in a country where every body is compassionate.

They have no idea of bleeding, nor of the advantage which we derive from it. I do not even believe that there is one person amongst them who would voluntarily submit to this operation; but, with regard to the Hottentots of the colonies, as they are accustomed to the European manners, they have also received their diseases and adopted their remedies.

The operation performed by their physicians, of which the famous Kolben speaks, and the custom which he ascribes to the Hottentots of the desert, of consulting the entrails of sheep, suspending the caul of the animal from the patient's neck, leaving it there to rot, and other tales of the like kind, were undoubtedly written for the vulgar, and are at best calculated only to amuse the ignorant. Where there is neither religion nor worship, there can be no superstition. It is still less agreeable to truth, that in the horde these pretended physicians hold a rank superior to that of their priests. To be more exact,

exact, the Hottentots are acquainted neither with physicians, distinction of rank, nor priests; and their language has no word to express any of these things.

To be sensible how far this visionary suffered himself to be led away by his imagination, we need only read in his work, that a Hottentot physician employed Roman vitriol to cure a person attacked by the leprosy. How is it possible that these savages should be acquainted with this salt, which is not found in their country, since it is produced by a chemical operation? To give an air of probability to such absurdities, it would be necessary at least to suppose some knowledge amongst these people, and to lend them our arts, our alembics, our furnaces, and all our apparatus of pharmacy.

When a Hottentot dies, he is buried in his worst kross, and the limbs are disposed in such a manner that the body is entirely covered. The relations then transport it to a certain distance from the horde, and depositing it in a pit dug for this purpose, and which is never deep, cover it with earth, and then with stones, if any are to be found in the neighbourhood. Such a mausoleum  
proves

proves but a very weak defence against the attacks of the jackal and the hyæna: the body indeed is soon dug up, and devoured.

However badly this last duty may be discharged, the Hottentots are not much to be blamed, when we call to mind the funeral ceremonies of the ancient and celebrated Parfis, still attached to the custom of exposing their dead on the tops of high towers, or in open cemeteries, in order that the crows and the vultures may feed upon them, and carry them away in morsels.

A Hottentot, when he respectfully deposits in the earth the lifeless remains of his father or his friend, leaves to the salts, and dissolving juices which they contain, the care of decomposing the body quietly and at leisure: if he does not always succeed according to his expectation, and if he does not find the ashes of what was most dear to him, he is plunged in grief, and by his lamentations sufficiently shews his affectionate disposition, and the great humanity of his character.

When it is the chief of a horde that they have lost, their religious ceremonies are increased; that is to say, the heap of stones  
and

and earth, under which he is buried, is of greater size, and more apparent.

If the deceased was a person highly esteemed, the family are in great grief and consternation; the night is spent in cries, and howlings, mixed with imprecations against death; while the friends who arrive augment this noise, which, at a distance, one would take for the intoxication of joy, or the shrieks of despair. The signs of their grief are not however equivocal to those who live in the midst of them: I have seen some of them shed bitter tears, and in great abundance.

Dr. Sparmann says he was witness to a scene in the colonies, which he relates in the following manner: “ Two old women shook  
“ and beat with their fists one of their coun-  
“ trymen, who was either dying or already  
“ dead, while they loudly poured forth re-  
“ proaches, or consoling expressions, close to  
“ his ear.” We must not allow ourselves to be deceived by a tale of this kind. Had these women been convinced that the young man was dead, they would have certainly expressed their affection without that shaking  
and

and those blows : but these movements, which the Doctor considers as the convulsive agitations of despair, were only a method of supplying the want of spirituous liquors, which people have recourse to in Europe, to clear up a very difficult doubt, and which the Hottentots are deprived of. The violent agitation, employed by the two old women, is an efficacious remedy that produces good effects, since Dr. Sparmann adds, that it revived the patient.

The small pox, which has so often ravaged the kraals of the Hottentots in the colonies, never made its appearance but once among the Gonaquas. As this disease then swept away more than the half of their people, they dread it so much, and it inspires them with so great horror, that, on the first news of its breaking out in the colonies, they abandon every thing, and fly to the bosom of the deserts. Wretched then is the condition of those whom they suspect to be infected. Convinced that there is no remedy for this dreadful plague, whether it be a parent, a wife, or a child, that is sick, the voice of nature appears to become silent. They

abandon them to their unhappy fate, so that they die of hunger, if not by the virulence of the distemper.

This terror, so natural among a savage people, is in no manner repugnant to that sincere affection and purity of manners by which they are distinguished. The picture of the devastation of their hordes, always present to their imaginations, is a sufficient motive to induce them for a moment to forget the most sacred duties; but one is shocked to read in old authors, and to hear a modern traveller repeat after them, that the Hottentots, when they take it into their heads to change their residence, abandon, without pity and without regret, their old men, and every thing that is useless to them, or that might tend to retard their march. This assertion ought not to be adduced as a rule, or a general custom: unless they find themselves in such fatal and urging circumstances as that of which I have just now spoken, or in war, what motives could make them hasten rather than retard their journey? Besides, I can never allow myself to think that a Hottentot can act in this manner without long experiencing the deepest regret.

When



When they are attacked by an enemy superior in number, and when they are incapable of repelling force by force, they disperse and conceal themselves in the best manner possible; and this is the only rational method that they can pursue. When surprised by the enemy, they are compelled, much against their inclination, to leave behind them their old people, their sick, and such stragglers and others as cannot follow them. What man then is there so little acquainted with the disastrous consequences of war, as to make it criminal in a Hottentot to yield to a necessity, under which an European even would be forced to bend?

I will go still farther, and I am not afraid of saying all that I know. The savages do not hesitate to have recourse to the same expedient in the time of a famine—a misfortune no less formidable than the small pox and war, when they are attacked by it. In such a case, deserting a few individuals, whom indeed they could not save, becomes a sacrifice necessary for the preservation of the whole: even those who fly are not certain of escaping the general scourge. More than three fourths perish by the way, in the midst

midst of the sands and the rocks, tormented by thirst, and exhausted by hunger; while the few that survive are obliged to make long marches before they can find the smallest assistance.

Such are the three motives that make the Hottentots commit a barbarity to which they find themselves impelled by a force superior to affection or a sense of duty. In timid and simple hearts nature can do nothing: but though its influence be suspended for a moment, it is no less powerful or great; and public calamities, among people unacquainted with the combinations of our arts, and who have no means of alleviating them but by a sudden flight, ought not to be the touchstone by which we try them, nor the rule by which they are to be judged.

Those indispensable emigrations, to which they are compelled by the difference of the seasons, will not, I hope, be brought as a fourth example of their barbarity. When an extraordinary drought has dried up all the springs as well as the surrounding lakes, when a scorching sun has withered the pastures, or when an infectious distemper has broken out among the cattle in the neighbourhood,

bourhood, either of these causes obliges them to change their habitation; but this necessary removal is always made with the greatest tranquillity, and without confusion, though with expedition. They first send off their flocks, and then place the old and infirm on the backs of oxen; no person is left behind; the valuable effects are before; and all peaceably pursuing their journey, erect huts, and establish themselves in the first place that is suitable to their manner of living, and to their wants. I have often met hordes who had been under the necessity of quitting their residence for some of the above reasons, and I always found that they were attended by the old and the sick. How often, by means of a few rolls of tobacco, and more so by a few glasses of brandy, which revived these poor savages, and brightened up their countenances with a smile, have I enjoyed the satisfaction of seeing them shed tears of gratitude! and when separating from them, and pursuing my way, I arrived the same or next day at the spot they had left, though I examined the whole neighbourhood with the greatest care, I found no traces of that insensibility with

5

which

which they have been accused. All the huts had been carried away, and their effects and domestic animals had followed them.

The children, and, failing them, the nearest relations of the deceased, take possession of whatever is left; but the quality of a chief is not hereditary. He is always appointed by the horde, and his power is limited. Though possessed of power sufficient to enable him to do good to whomsoever he pleases, he has no power to do hurt: he bears no external mark of distinction, and enjoys no privilege above others, except that of being exempted from going in his turn, according to custom, to keep the flocks in the fields. In their councils, his advice prevails, if it be judged good; if not, no regard is paid to it. When they are about to go to war, they know neither rank nor divisions, neither generals nor captains; all are either soldiers or colonels. Each attacks or defends after his own manner; the most intrepid march in the van; and, when victory declares itself, they do not bestow upon one man the honour of an action which has proved successful by the courage of all: it is the whole nation that triumph,

Of all the people whom I ever saw, the Gonaquas are the only nation that can be considered as free; but they will perhaps be soon obliged to remove to a greater distance, or receive laws from the Dutch government. All the land to the east being in general good, the planters endeavour to extend their possessions in that quarter as much as they can; and their avarice doubtless will some day succeed. Misery must then be the portion of these happy and peaceable people; and every trace of their liberty will be destroyed by massacres and invasions. Thus have all those hordes mentioned by old authors been treated; and, by being often dismembered and weakened, they are now reduced to a state of absolute dependance on the Dutch. The existence of the Hottentots, their names, and their history, will therefore in time be accounted fabulous; unless some traveller, who may possess curiosity enough to induce him to discover their remains, should have the courage to penetrate into the remote desarts inhabited by the great Nimiquas, where rocks more and more hardened by time, and old and barren mountains, do not produce

produce a single plant worthy to engage the attention of the speculative botanist.

The tribes mentioned by Kolben, under the names of the *Gunjemans* and the *Koopmans*, never existed but in the imagination.

The name of *Gunjemans*, which signifies nothing in the language of the Hottentots, must have been corrupted by some ignorant traveller who wrote it improperly. The name ought to be *Goed-mans*, composed of two Dutch words that signify good men, or good people; a qualification given by the first planters to all the Hottentots in general, because they found them peaceable and obliging.

The name of *Koopmans* was also given to those who first carried on trade by barter. These two words signify, in very good Dutch, a merchant or dealer; but they are no more applicable to one nation than to another. Thus the traveller, not comprehending the languages of those countries which he traverses, retains their expressions imperfectly, writes them still worse, and forms the name of a savage horde from a barbarism. The manners of foreign nations, and every thing that concerns them, can never be accurately

described, unless one be capable of speaking different languages.

Had the authors, for example, who have advanced that the Hottentots worship the moon, comprehended the meaning of the words which they chant whilst she displays her light, they would have observed that they address neither prayers, invocations, nor homage to that peaceful luminary. They would have known that the subject of these songs is always some adventure that has happened between them and the neighbouring horde; and that equally ready as the negroes, they can sing a whole night on one subject, by repeating the words a thousand times over. They prefer the night to the day for this purpose, because it is cooler, and invites them to dancing and to pleasure.

When they are desirous of indulging in this amusement, they join hands, and form a circle of greater or less extent, in proportion to the number of male and female dancers, who are always mixed with a kind of symmetry. When this chain is made, they turn round from one side to another, separating at certain intervals to mark the measure; and from time to time clap their hands without interrupting

interrupting the cadence, while with their voices they accompany the sound of the instruments, and continually chant *boo, boo!* This is the general burden of their song. Sometimes one of the dancers quitting the circle, goes to the centre, and there forms alone a few steps after the English manner; all the merit and beauty of which consist in performing them with equal quickness and precision, without stirring from the spot where he stands. After this they all quit each other's hands; follow one another carelessly, with an air of terror and melancholy, their heads leaning to one shoulder, and their eyes cast down towards the ground, which they look at with attention; and a moment after they break forth in the liveliest demonstrations of joy, and the most extravagant merriment. They are highly delighted with this contrast, when it is well performed. All this is at bottom but an alternate assemblage of very droll and amusing pantomimes. It must be observed that the dancers make a hollow and monotonous kind of humming, which never ceases but when they join the spectators, to sing the wonderful chorus *boo, boo!* which appears to be the



life and soul of this magnificent music. They usually conclude with a general ball; that is to say, the ring is broken, and they all dance in confusion, as each chooses; and upon this occasion they display all their strength and agility. The most expert dancers repeat, by way of defiance to one another, those dangerous leaps and musical quivers of our grand academies, which excite laughter as deservedly as the *boo boo* of Africa.

The instruments which are most esteemed on account of their excellence are the *goura*, the *joum-joum*, the *rabouquin*, and the *romelpot*.

The *goura* is shaped like the bow of a savage Hottentot; it is of the same size; and a string made of intestines, fixed to one of its extremities, is retained at the other by a knot in the barrel of a quill, which is flattened and cleft. This quill being displayed, forms a very long isosceles triangle, about two inches in length; and at the base of this triangle the hole is made that keeps the string fast, the end of which, drawn back, is tied at the other end of the bow with a very thin thong of leather: this cord may be stretched so as to have a greater or less degree

gree of tension, according to the pleasure of the musician; but when several *gouras* play together, they are never in unison. Such is the first instrument of the Hottentots, which one would not suppose to be a wind instrument, though it is undoubtedly of that kind. The figure of it may be seen in the eighth plate, by the side of a Hottentot. It is held almost in the same manner as a huntsman's horn, with that end where the quill is fixed towards the performer's mouth, which he applies to it, and either by aspiration or expiration draws from it very melodious tones. The savages, however, who succeed best on this instrument, cannot play any regular tune; they only emit certain twangs, like those drawn in a particular manner from a violin or a violincello. I took great pleasure in seeing one of my attendants, called *John*, who was accounted an adept, regale for whole hours his companions, who, transported and ravished, interrupted him every now and then by exclaiming, "Ah! how charming that is! begin that again." *John* began again; but his second performance had no resemblance to the first: for, as I have said, these people cannot play any regular

gular tune upon this instrument, the tones of which are only the effect of chance, and of the quality of the quill. The best quills are those taken from the wings of a certain species of bustard; and whenever I happened to kill one of these birds, I was always solicited to make a small sacrifice for the support of our orchestra.

When a woman plays the *goura*, it changes its name merely because she changes the manner of using it, and it is then transformed into a *joum-joum*. Seated on the ground, she places it perpendicularly before her, in the same manner as a harp is held in Europe: by putting her foot between the bow and the string, taking care not to touch the latter, she keeps it firm in that position. With her right hand she grasps the bow in the middle; and, while she blows with her mouth on the quill, she strikes the string in different places with a small stick five or six inches in length, which she holds in the other. This produces some variety in the modulation; but the instrument must be brought close to the ear, before one can catch distinctly all the degradations of the sound. This manner of holding the *goura* struck me much, especially as  
it

it greatly added to the graces of the female who performed on it.

The *rabouquin* is a triangular piece of board, with three strings made of intestines, supported by a bridge, which may be stretched at pleasure by means of pegs, like those of our instruments in Europe; it is indeed nothing else than a guitar with three strings. Any other person but a Hottentot would perhaps produce some music from it, and render it agreeable: but the latter is contented with stamping it with his fingers; and this he does without method and without art, and even unintentionally.

The *romelpot* is the most noisy of all the instruments of these savages. It is formed of a piece of the trunk of a tree made hollow, over one of the ends of which is stretched a sheep's skin well tanned; on this the performer beats with his hands, or, to speak more accurately, with his fists, and sometimes even with a stick. This instrument, the sound of which may be heard at a great distance, is undoubtedly not a masterpiece of invention; but in every country it is usual to supply by noise what cannot be obtained from taste.

I have perhaps enlarged too much on the dances

dances and different instruments of the Hottentots. The latter, as may readily be perceived, are not very curious; but this detail, which in some measure tends to throw light on the manners of these savages, deserves not to be neglected.

Approaching near to Nature, and under her immediate protection, the savages have no need of our noisy and most harmonious orchestras to excite them in their festivals to the liveliest demonstrations of pleasure and joy. The confined and monotonous modulation of their music is sufficient; and I believe that even without it they would caper equally well.

In his *Course of Geographical Lectures* one of our modern authors, who has made it a rule to study men at the same time that he describes places, observes, with great sagacity, “ That in a polished state dancing and singing are two arts; but that in the bosom of the forests they are almost natural signs of concord, friendship, tenderness, and pleasure. We learn under masters,” adds this writer, “ to command our voice, and to move our limbs in cadence; the savage has no other instructor but his own pas-  
 I “ fions,

“ fions, his own heart, and nature. What he  
“ feels we pretend to feel; the savage there-  
“ fore who dances or fings is always happy.”

I have already obferved that the Hottentots never affemble to amufe themfelves but in the night, as their daily occupations leave them no other time. A particular duty belongs to each, which muft be difcharged: fome muft continually watch over the flocks fcattered throughout the fields, not only to prevent them from ftraying, but to protect them from the attack of ravenous animals, which are continually lying in wait for them; others muft keep them clean, and milk them twice a day; fome muft weave mats, and collect dry wood for their evening fires; and others muft provide fubfiftence, and fearch for roots. Thefe laft occupations belong principally to the women; whilft the men, on their part, go a hunting, infpect the fnares which have been laid in different places, and form arrows, and all the other inftruments which they have occafion for. Though thefe inftruments, and all thofe works that come from their hands, are in general coarfe and clumsy, they require a good deal of time and pains, becaufe they are deftitute of a number  
of

of tools necessary for abridging their labour: their ingenuity is much less admirable than their patience.

It would have appeared astonishing had these people whom I so often frequented, and amongst whom I lived so long, been cunning or deceitful enough to conceal their character from me so much, that I should never have observed, either in their conduct or manner of living, any sign or act of superstition. It would be highly improper to consider as religious practices certain privations which they impose on themselves, and which appear altogether natural and simple, when one takes the trouble of examining them thoroughly. For example, they scarcely ever eat the flesh of the hare, or of the antelope called *duykers*. In their opinion, the former is an ugly and disgusting animal, and the flesh of the latter they consider as too black; besides, these two animals are always exceedingly lean, which to them is a sufficient reason for rejecting it. But a striking proof that they deprive themselves of this resource from no chimerical idea, is that, in times of scarcity and want, I have seen them think themselves very happy in being able to recur to it. Because a Dutch-  
man

man would be disgusted with the sight of a plateful of those snails found on vines, or of frogs, however well cooked—whilst a Frenchman can make a hearty meal on these viands, which are far from being delicate—does it follow that the disgust of a Batavian ought to be considered as a religious abstinence enjoined by the consistory?

Before I announce as an essential rite of the Hottentots the ceremony of cutting off a joint either of a finger or a toe, and before I ascribe to the same motive their semi-castration, it is reasonable to establish the truth of these two customs. Kolben heard them mentioned in the same manner as many other things, but he never procured certain information respecting them. This he sufficiently proves, when he ascribes them to all the Hottentots indiscriminately; which is equally false as the other assertions of that author. Dr. Sparmann falls also into a very strange error, when he maintains, in opposition to Kolben, that semi-castration is no where practised. These two ceremonies are actually practised among two hordes situated to the north of the Cape, under the twenty-eighth degree of south latitude, viz. the *Geisiquas*



*Geisiquas* and the *Koraquas*, in whose country I found the giraffes, of which I shall speak in my second voyage. The philosopher Kolben assuredly never travelled so far, except in imagination.

Dr. Sparmann has doubtless suffered himself to be deceived respecting the *Gonaquas*, when he is inclined to believe that these hordes use circumcision. The planters affirmed this to me as well as to him; and on this account I found a powerful temptation to doubt the truth of it: but having since had better opportunities than any one of satisfying myself concerning so important a fact, I declare, on the contrary, that this nation, and all the Hottentots, without exception, have the prepuce of a prodigious size; a mark that sufficiently distinguishes them from all other savages, and which certainly has not been observed before.

The case is the same respecting that disgusting apron of the Hottentot women, which has long made a conspicuous though ridiculous figure in history, or rather in the fables of the vulgar. Another whim, always proceeding from the same source, has as rashly suppressed it; though it is still fashionable

able among a certain horde, of whom I shall soon have occasion to speak. I say it is fashionable; for, instead of being the gift of nature, it ought to be considered as one of the most monstrous refinements ever invented by I know not what coquetry, altogether peculiar to a certain small corner of the world.

Some old authors have said that the families of the savages sleep all promiscuously together, in the same hut; and are neither acquainted with difference of age, nor that invincible horror which separates beings connected by blood. These savages indeed, confined to what is strictly necessary, have never thought of preserving, under an apparent decency, all the turpitude of unnatural inclinations; and separate apartments for brother and sister, mother and son, are not to be found among them. But to conclude, because they have only one habitation, one bed, and one mat to repose on, after the labours of the day, that they live like the brutes, would be to calumniate innocence, and offer an insult to nature. There is only one ill-informed or malevolent author who has suffered himself to give credit to these infa-

mous suspicions—Yes, the whole family inhabit the same hut; the father lies by the side of his daughter, and the mother by the son; but on the return of Aurora each rises with a pure heart, and without having occasion to blush before the Author of all Beings, or any of the creatures whom he has marked with the seal of his own resemblance. A savage is neither a brute nor a barbarian: the real monster is he who sees crimes every where, because he supposes them; and who asserts their existence on the odious testimony of his own conscience.

I have visited more than one horde of savages; and I never found any where but modesty and reserve amongst the women, I can add among the men also. The author whom I have so often contradicted pays respect to truth, when he confesses that people would judge very erroneously, were they to believe that, because the savages go naked, they have as little modesty as veil; and that it was with great difficulty he could find men who, even by the temptation of presents, would consent to put aside their jakals, that he might be convinced by his own eyes whether they were circumcised or not.

I have

I have already said that too much intercourse with the whites has ruined and corrupted their manners; and of the truth of this assertion the Hottentots of the colonies are a striking example; those of the desert, being nothing different in nature, will perhaps yield one day to seduction, should it happen to reach them, and will suffer themselves to be led away by the force of example. When Dr. Forster, in his *Voyage round the World* with Captain Cook, informs us that the women of Easter Isles were *lascivious courtezans*, he does not conceal from us that the sailors gave themselves up openly and without shame to the most infamous debauchery with them; but we ought to add, without any hesitation, that the women of savage nations, once visited by corrupted Europeans, and too well acquainted with their perverse inclinations, prostitute themselves to all those who choose to enjoy them, and gratify their taste, doubtless from a dread of the barbarous cruelties which the whites are capable of committing.

In all places wherever a desire of information induced me to enter upon this subject with such women as I met in the course of

my travels, I always received one simple and uniform answer, which they give to those who, suspecting them of incestuous cohabitation, wish to be convinced by their own acknowledgement: "You compare us then to brutes," said they to me; "for brutes alone are capable of doing what you say."

I wish I may not be deceived—I believe in virtue, for the sake of those even who are unacquainted with that word, and who have never written voluminous commentaries on the idea it contains. This sentiment, innate in the heart of man when it has not been corrupted by education and example, was given him as a sign of his dignity and distinction. Horror at the idea of uniting with his own blood, is one of the grandest characteristics by which the Creator wished to separate the human species from the class of animals; and this insurmountable barrier can be broken only by the most infamous depravation.

I dare affirm, then, that if there be a corner of the earth where a decency of conduct and manners is still honoured, we must seek for its temple in the bosoms of the desarts. These principals the savage has received neither from prejudice nor education; he is indebted

debted for them to nature: in him love is a very confined want, and he does not convert it, as in civilized countries, into a tumultuous passion, which carries disorder and destruction along with it. In vain should I attempt, after the example of Buffon, to eradicate this fever of the mind, this disease of exalted imaginations. I shall not break to pieces an altar loaded with the rich gifts of poets and romance writers; I should have too powerful antagonists to combat: and the divinity who owes his birth to such beautiful chimeras, would let loose his votaries against me, nor ever forgive me for this impious sacrilege.

A physiognomist, or, if the reader chooses, a modern wit, would entertain his company by assigning to the Hottentot, in the scale of beings, a place between man and the ourang-outang. I cannot however consent to this systematic arrangement; the qualities which I esteem in him will never suffer him to be degraded so far; and I have found his figure sufficiently beautiful, because I experienced the goodness of his heart. It must indeed be allowed that there is something peculiar in his features, which in a certain degree

separates him from the generality of mankind. His cheek bones are exceedingly prominent ; so that his face being very broad in that part, and the jaw bones on the contrary extremely narrow, his visage continues still decreasing even to the point of the chin. This configuration gives him an air of lankness, which makes his head appear very much disproportioned, and too small for his full and plump body. His flat nose rises scarcely half an inch at its greatest elevation ; and his nostrils, which are excessively wide, often exceed in height the ridge of his nose. His mouth is large, and furnished with small teeth, well enamelled and perfectly white : his eyes, very beautiful and open, incline a little towards the nose, like those of the Chinese : and to the sight and touch his hair has the resemblance of wool ; it is very short, curls naturally, and in colour is as black as ebony. He has very little hair, yet he employs no small care to pull out by the roots part of what he has ; but the natural thinness of his eyebrows saves him from this trouble in that part. Though he has no beard but upon the upper lip, below the nose, and at the extremity of the chin, he never fails to pluck it  
out

out as soon as it appears. This gives him an effeminate look; which, joined to the natural mildness of his character, destroys that commanding fierceness common to all men in a state of nature, and which has acquired them the proud title of kings.

With regard to proportion of body, a Hottentot is as perfect as if cast in a mould. His gait is graceful and agile; and all his motions, which are easy, seem very different from those of the American savages, who appear only to have been sketched out by the hand of nature.

The women, with more delicacy of features, exhibit the same characteristic marks in their figure: they are equally well made. Their breasts, admirably placed, have a most beautiful form, while in the bloom of youth; and their hands are small, and their feet exceedingly well shaped, though they never wear sandals. The sound of their voice is soft; and their idiom, passing through the throat, is not destitute of harmony. When they speak, they employ a great many gestures, which give power and gracefulness to their arms.

The Hottentots, being naturally timid, are



consequently not at all an enterprising people. Their phlegmatic coolness, and their serious looks, give them an air of reserve, which they never lay aside, even at the most joyful moments; while, on the contrary, all other black or tawny nations give themselves up to pleasure with the liveliest joy, and without any restraint.

A profound indifference to the affairs of life inclines them very much to inactivity and indolence: the keeping of their flocks, and the care of procuring a subsistence, are the only objects that occupy their thoughts. They never follow hunting as sportsmen, but like people oppressed and tormented by hunger. In short, forgetting the past, and being under no uneasiness for the future, they are struck only with the present; and it is that which alone engages their attention.

They are however the best, the kindest, and the most hospitable of people. Whoever travels among them may be assured of finding food and lodging; and though they will receive presents, yet they never ask for any thing. If the traveller has a long journey to accomplish, and if they learn from the information he requires that there are no hopes of  
his

his soon meeting with other hordes, that which he is going to quit supply him with provisions as far as their circumstances will allow, and with every thing else necessary for his continuing his journey, and reaching the place of his destination.

Before the arrival of the Europeans at the Cape, the Hottentots were not acquainted with commerce, and perhaps they had no idea even of barter; but, on the appearance of tobacco and toys, they were soon initiated into a part of the mercantile mysteries. These objects, which at first were only agreeable novelties, by length of time have become wants. When these articles grow scarce among them, they are supplied by the Hottentots of the colonies; for it is proper to observe, that however eager they may be to get such trifles into their possession, they do not take the trouble to go one step in search of them themselves, and they choose rather to do without them: an useful lesson to those who drag out a miserable existence in continual agitation by pursuing shadows.

Such are these people, or at least such did they appear to me, in all the innocence of manners,

manners, and of a pastoral life. They excite also the idea of mankind in a state of infancy. A noble action, which I shall relate here, though it belongs to my second voyage, more to the north of the Cape, and towards the western coast, will finish the picture which I have here traced out with the utmost candour and truth—without eloquence, I allow; but without enthusiasm, without vain declamation, and with that natural sincerity which is so dear to me, and which I embrace every opportunity of professing.

A pretty considerable horde of the Kami-nouquas came to visit my camp, with that confidence which is always inspired by honest and upright intentions, and which all those men possess who have never been corrupted by their intercourse with other nations. Being forced to husband my provisions, it was impossible for me to regale all these people with brandy; they were too numerous; and I could not, without imprudence, shew my generosity. I however ordered a glassful to be given to the chief, and to each of those who by their figure, or rather by their age, appeared to be most respectable. But to  
what

what resources and to what means will not beneficence have recourse! and how great is its ingenuity, when it wishes to diffuse its blessings! I was very much astonished when, perceiving that they preserved the liquor without swallowing it, I saw them all approach their companions, who had received no share, and distribute it to them with their mouths, in the same manner as the tender birds of heaven feed their young with their bills. This unexpected action, I confess, threw me into great agitation, and I remained astonished: for, on the sight of this affecting scene, what heart is there so unnaturally hardened as would not have melted into tears? Filled with admiration and respect, and moved to the bottom of my soul, I threw myself into the arms of the chief, who like the rest had just shared his liquor with those who surrounded him, and I bedewed his venerable person with my tears. Ye fine prattlers, ye elegant coquettes, perfumed with amber and musk, exclaim as ye please, and exhibit your charming grimaces! Disorders of the stomach, vapours, and all the evils of debilitated health, the usual consequences of a  
debauched

debauched life spent at the age of thirty, occasioned no disgust to my divine Kaminouquas, in this sweet and fraternal communication.

I can never call to remembrance without emotion these respectable people, and several others, among whom I observed the same ceremony repeated. When I saw them, on their separating from me, return peaceably and contented, “Happy mortals !” said I ; “long may you retain your valuable innocence, but live in ignorance ! Poor savages, regret not that you were born under a scorching sun, on a dry and parched soil, which scarcely produces briars and thorns. Consider your present situation rather as a blessing from Heaven : your desarts will never tempt the avarice of the whites. Unite yourselves to those fortunate hordes, who like you have not had an opportunity of knowing them ; destroy and efface the least traces of that yellow dust which is converted into metal in your caverns and rocks—ye are ruined if they discover it. Know that it is the scourge of the world, the source of all crimes : and dread, above  
“ all

“all things, the approach of an Almagro, a Pizarro, a Cortez, and of the bloody stole of the Vanverdes.”

In an uncivilized state man is naturally good; why then should the Hottentot be an exception to this general rule? It is not just to accuse him of cruelty; he is only revengeful. Too sensible of the evil done him, what can be more natural than to repel force by force? It becomes us well to enjoin the children of nature to practise our fictitious virtues, when their names are scarcely known to us, and no one undertakes to follow what they prescribe. Even the law of retaliation, the only one in use before we thought of being philosophers, what else is it but the right of rendering injury for injury, and of taking away the lives of those who do not scruple to attempt ours?

Should the savages of Africa or America take it into their heads, some day, that they live miserable, deprived of our arts, riches, and all the resources of our genius; and, uniting together in arms, should hasten to inundate Europe, and to drive us from our possessions, with what countenances could we receive these barbarians, and by what sufferings

ferings on our part would they see their boldness rewarded? Such however is their history, or ours; such have been our enterprises attempted in three quarters of the world with too much success. In every place where we have thought proper to establish ourselves, we have compelled these unhappy wretches, persecuted to a state of slavery, to betake themselves to flight; we have appropriated to ourselves, without the least scruple, whatever we found useful to us; and when the hour of vengeance has been proclaimed for them, and when they measured their blows by the magnitude of their injuries, without reviewing our own conduct, and too much blinded by interest or fanaticism, we have dared to call them barbarians, eaters of men, and ferocious animals, who live by murder, and allay their thirst with blood.

To what imprudence must we attribute the death of that celebrated navigator Captain Cook?—I am inclined to believe that a consciousness of his own strength, and his bold and enterprising character, never led him to commit any of those criminal excesses of which he in his turn perished a victim; but the ardent desire of the undisciplined crew  
that

that followed him, made the islanders take up arms against him. Those sailors made free with the women, and even dared to lay their hands upon them whenever they had an opportunity. This was too much for them to be silent any longer; nothing could stop these incensed savages. The commander is observed through the smoke of cannon, and amidst the noise of threatening artillery; they seize upon him; and he is massacred, even in sight of his soldiers, because he did not repress their disorders in time.

The first sentiment with which people who travel among savages ought to inspire them is confidence: to gain theirs, one must be kind and humane; must never take advantage of their weakness, or employ threats; and must never seem terrified by their appearance: when nothing is required from them, they will grant every thing. People ought to have so much command over their passions as to observe the strictest continence, and not to seek after their women. If they are jealous, they will become implacable enemies; if they are not, their condescension with regard to you, in this respect, places them too much on a level, and you lose in  
their



their eyes that useful superiority by which they were at first dazzled. Though this passion should not be general, there are always some individuals tormented by it; and it is justly observed that the nations least subject to it are the most dissolute in their manners, and the farthest removed from nature.

To make one's self known to the savages with advantage, superiority of strength must be the last thing which you avail yourself of; for it is not natural for mankind to be suspicious of those whom they do not fear. However, in following these precautions, people ought to preserve a calm and serene air; and, when they travel among them, never to employ their arms, or shew the use of them, but in order to render them a service, either by procuring them game, or destroying such ferocious animals as are enemies to their flocks. After this you may quit a horde in perfect security, certain of leaving regret behind you; and gratitude will continually recal you to their remembrance. Many among them will separate from you with reluctance; they will quit their companions to accompany you; and will

will conduct you to another horde, among whom from the favourable testimony given of you by your guides, you may be assured of finding the same love, the same desire to serve you, the same entertainments, and all that hospitable care which always proceeds from confidence. With these peaceful principles so agreeable to my disposition, I traversed a small part of an immense quarter of the globe; and I might have traversed the whole of Africa in the same manner, had I not been stopped by insurmountable obstacles, which all my zeal could not overcome, and which it would be useless to give an account of here.

It was also from these maxims that I was every day more and more convinced that a traveller cannot associate any one with him in such an enterprize, without running the risque of rendering it abortive. I was certain of my own manner of viewing dangers, and of the means I had to guard against them. Surrounded by people and friends equal in power, in perilous situations, I could not have attered myself with the hopes of inducing them all to follow my opinion; the foolish obstinacy of one might have occasioned the

destruction of all; but, if I deceived myself, I had only to reproach my own judgment.

The Hottentots are represented as a miserable and poor nation, superstitious, ferocious, and indolent, and excessively dirty; in a word, they are vilified in every possible manner. Were there in these assertions even one that approached truth, it would be better, in order to suppress extravagant exaggeration, to adhere simply to the tales, already so absurd, of those tiresome planters, who always delight in deceiving a stranger by things which the latter hopes to receive instruction from, whilst listening to them. People ought to speak from their own experience, and advance nothing more than what they have seen. Had these maxims been adhered to in such a work as that of Doctor Sparmann, for example—a work valuable in more respects than one—interesting observations, well written, would not have been inundated with a deluge of very apocryphal relations of hunting lions, elephants, &c.; each more improbable and ridiculous than another. He would not then have spoken of a licorn, delineated perhaps by a planter upon some uninhabited rock; and he would

not have assigned a square instead of a round form to the huts of the Caffres whom he never visited. I must allow, in favour of this learned man, that his candour and probity made him consider every thing as incontestable, the moment it was certified to him by any of the planters. John Kock, particularly, whom he calls the most accurate and judicious observer he ever knew, undoubtedly never expected that excessive praise which he has lavished upon him, while the inhabitants of the whole town and colony refute them, and do not hesitate, on account of these errors only, to rank next to Kolben's a book which would have been highly useful, had the author confined himself to such objects as were familiar to him.

I pay respect to truth when I find it in Dr. Sparmann; and I lay to the charge of his observer those falsehoods which disgust me: but when either the one or the other assures us "that he never saw the savages  
" wipe or clean their skin; that, to scour  
" their hands, they rub them with cow  
" dung; that they rub also their arms with  
" it, as far as the shoulders; that this un-  
" tion, which is not necessary, is intended

“merely for ornament; and that the dust  
“and the dirt mixing with their greasy oint-  
“ment, and the sweat of their bodies, ad-  
“here to the skin, and continually cor-  
“rode it, &c.”—and when Doctor Spar-  
mann afterwards confesses that he never saw  
these savages wipe themselves, or clean their  
skin—I find his manner of reasoning very  
weak, and his logic equally false; for if I  
should, in my turn, attest that I never saw  
cow dung used by the Hottentots as an or-  
nament; that I never observed their skin  
corroded by sweat, ointments, and filth—this  
negative assertion would neither persuade any  
one, nor elucidate the question.

It cannot be denied that all these savages,  
without exception, men, women, and chil-  
dren, are excellent swimmers, and perhaps  
the best divers in the world. What conclu-  
sion ought we to draw from what I have re-  
lated respecting the women, whom I sur-  
prised while bathing and diving like fishes;  
but that practice, which they use several  
times a day, necessarily leads them to a spe-  
cies of cleanliness, which leaves little power  
to ointments, or even to dust, to spoil and  
corrode the skin?

The continual care and attention bestowed by the Gonaquas on their dress, sufficiently prove that they are fond of cleanliness: all, therefore, that can be said, is, that it is ill understood; and even before we proceed so far, it might be necessary to enquire whether they are not obliged to *boughou* themselves in this manner, either on account of the temperature of the climate, or from a want of those resources which nature has not pointed out to them. Their clothes, indeed, are only the spoils taken from savage animals; but, as I have already shewn, they do not neglect, as some have pretended, to clean and prepare them before they employ them for making dresses.

A Hottentot is neither poor nor miserable. He is not poor, because his desires never exceeding his knowledge, which is very limited, he never feels the spur of necessity. Misery is a point of comparison of which he has no conception: a complete uniformity, and the same resources, rendering the lot of all perfectly equal, when abundance prevails, they are all happy, and in times of scarcity they are all in the like manner exposed to want. The disgusting contrast of riches mounted on a

golden car, and misery dragging its rags along in the dirt, can never pain their hearts: this is an idea which they do not comprehend. The sight of indigence trod under foot, that punishment of compassionate souls, never appears to their eyes under a thousand melancholy shapes. This mortification man in a state of nature never experiences; and if man in a state of civilization becomes accustomed to it in time, and if he attains to such a degree of apathy as to consider that inequality of rank, so shocking and so fatal, as the best state, he is no longer an avowed child of Nature; she disowns and rejects him, ashamed of her own works, which disgrace her hands.

After having so long interrupted the thread of my narration, to establish some certain notions respecting these Hottentots, hitherto too little known, something would be still wanting to the information I have given, did I not speak of a particular species or cast, which may be called the *composite*, and which is not older than a century. I do not know that any traveller has mentioned them. This new species will one day efface the ancient; and the epoch of their power will

will doubtless occasion great changes in the colony, and accelerate its ruin. The multiplication of these individuals, who may become infinite, ought to alarm the Dutch government; but at present it seems to be asleep, and to be under very little uneasiness concerning the fatal consequences of its indolence.

I here mean those natural children produced by the intercourse of the white men with the Hottentot women, and of these women with the negroes. At the Cape they are generally named *basters*. This denomination, however, more peculiarly belongs to the former, because the second are much less numerous; as the Hottentot women do not easily yield to the embraces of the negroes, for whom they entertain a kind of contempt; on account, as they say, of suffering themselves to be sold like beasts; while, on the other hand, they think themselves honoured by having commerce with the whites, and by being stiled their mistresses. It is the race arising from these latter unions that is continually gaining ground, and multiplying considerably every day; they are free, like the Hottentots, but



they imagine themselves superior to them; though they are despised at the Cape, where it is not even usual to baptise them. The character of these people partakes more of that of an European than of a Hottentot: they have more courage and more activity than the latter, and labour never discourages them; but, being more impetuous and more enterprising, they are also more mischievous and wicked. It is not uncommon to see them assassinate their masters, to whom they have sold their services; and it is they rather than the negroes, who appear foremost in devising acts of treachery, which they commit every day in the plantations. The Hottentot, too mild, and too void of passions, to enter into atrocious enterprises, would not have sufficient strength to carry them into execution; the most cruel treatment is not even capable of inspiring him with an idea of this kind. In a word, the planter who has Hottentots only in his service may sleep soundly, assured that he will soon be informed of danger, should any threaten him.

These *bastard* whites are robust and well made; their skin is of a clearer yellow than  
that

that of the Hottentots, and has the colour of dried lemon peel: it is very disagreeable to the sight. Their hair is black, much longer, and less frizzled. Intercourse with women of this new breed, as may naturally be supposed, produces a species still whiter, whose hair is also much less frizzled; and though, by thus proceeding gradually, there is at length no sensible difference between them and the Europeans in their hair and the whiteness of their skin, the prominence of the cheek bones is still remarkable. This is one indelible characteristic, which may be observed even after the fourth generation.

The union of the Hottentot women with the negroes, gives birth to a race still superior to those of whom I have spoken. They are much taller and better made, and their figure is more agreeable and engaging. Their colour, which holds a mean between the black of the father and the olive tint of the mother, is much less offensive to the sight; their moral and physical qualities are also very different. They are much sought after, on account of their being capable of great labour; but what above all renders them of the highest value is, that to much activity, without

without turbulence, they join a fidelity that never betrays, and which does not fall to the lot of any bastard white. Unluckily this race are not very numerous, on account of the difficulty of uniting the Hottentot women with the negroes, whom they despise.

It would have been highly advantageous to the public, as well as to the private interest of the planters, to have long ago excited government to encourage the propagation of this species; the sacrifice made would not have been burthensome, and the expences and money advanced would have been returned an hundred fold.

We no longer live in those ages of sacred ignorance, when all people who were black were accounted anthropophagi. The Spaniards themselves do not now believe, as in the time of their barbarous incursions into Peru, that a pure soul cannot exist but in a white body. Travellers, and above all found philosophy, teach us that an ugly covering may conceal a valuable diamond. Among the various negro nations that inhabit the western coasts of Africa, some are distinguished by a more social disposition than others, by nobler inclinations, by greater activity,  
and

and more aptitude for knowledge; and it is this race who ought to have been preferred, in order to spread them among the colonies, by granting them every freedom. The planters would have favoured, as much as they could, the union of these strangers with the Hottentot women; the latter, seeing them free, would not have despised them, and would have soon been familiarised with them; and thus would have arisen a generation of men, who, uniting to the mild and peaceable temper of their mothers the essential qualities of the best negroes of Guinea, would have destroyed as useless, and even dangerous, the cruel chains of slavery in all this part of Africa.

But these means, so easy and so natural, the execution of which sometime ago would not have met with any obstacle, will never be employed. At present it is too late to make any attempt of this kind; the turbulent race of the bastard whites are too numerous, and it may be easily foreseen that they will one day be predominant at the Cape.

Besides, though this project were still practicable, the desire and good intentions of  
the

the Dutch East-India Company would be rendered of no avail by various obstacles. Scrupulously exact in all their engagements, we know that they shew a generosity which for their own honour and prosperity, all commercial associations ought to assume as a model. There is no doubt but they would, without hesitation, make every sacrifice necessary for the execution of this excellent plan, so well calculated to immortalize them; but a radical fault, the fault of the government, must ever oppose it. It would be requisite, in the first place, to expel all the inhabitants of the Cape and of the colonies, or at least to reform their minds, in order to destroy those ridiculous and antipatriotic prejudices which they affect to entertain,

Government suffers, because it is not possible to check the progress of the evil, these planters, so proud of their colour, and who are distinguished by no personal merit from their slaves—it suffers, I say, these ignorant peasants, proud of a moderate fortune which they have not given themselves the trouble to acquire by their industry, to despise and treat with contempt those men, who, having deserved well of the Company by the ser-

vices they have performed, either as soldiers or sailors, establish themselves at the Cape in virtue of a permission granted them by government; so that the meanest and most worthless of the planters always consider a skilful sailor, or brave soldier, as a being in some manner degraded, and unworthy of being connected with them by marriage; and even the daughter of such a planter, educated in the same principles, would rather perish in misery, than become the companion for life of one of these defenders of their country.

In such circumstances, a brave sailor or soldier, subjected like all other men to the wants and imperious laws of nature, more powerful still in warm than in temperate climates, being unable to associate himself with a white woman who would render him happy, has no other resource but to unite with a female Hottentot. Hence proceeds that immense number of bastard whites, who at present swarm all over the colonies. The turbulent blood of the Europeans circulates and ferments in their veins; and disturbances may every moment result from it, which the planters, too widely dispersed to  
unite

unite soon enough, will neither have leisure nor power to prevent.

This bastard race is estimated at a sixth of the number of all the Hottentots in the colonies; and the origin of this mixture is only as old as the establishment of the Dutch at the Cape, that is to say, an hundred and thirty-six years. It may be readily presumed that, when the communication between the white men and the Hottentot women was first established, it was neither so easy nor so general as at present: and, on the other hand, the population of the colony did not amount, as it does now, to eighty thousand white people. This observation alone may be sufficient to give an idea of the actual progression of both. The Hottentot race subject to the colonies deviates more and more every day from its character and origin; they become corrupted and confounded by a mixture of the blacks and the whites; and, as this degeneration accelerates, their distinguishing marks will in time disappear altogether. The phlegmatic and cold constitution of the Hottentots sufficiently checks the progress of population already; whilst the same cause in the women has a contrary effect, and renders them

them very prolific. The Hottentot women have at most three or four children by their husbands; by negroes they triple that number; and bring forth still more to the whites.

If the bastard whites are naturally wicked; if they are daring, revengeful, enterprising, and perfidious—is it because they are the offspring of a white man and a Hottentot woman, and because the children bear a greater resemblance to the father than to the mother? This presumption, however mortifying it may be for our species, cannot be controverted. If it happen, which is very rare, that a white woman has connection with a Hottentot, the fruit of their intercourse always retains the good disposition, and the mild and beneficent temper, of the father. These instances, I must repeat, are very uncommon. In love affairs at the Cape, as in Europe, the women shew more modesty, delicacy, and reserve than the men: the latter, on the contrary, never hesitate to gratify their appetite, whoever the object of it may be; and the dangers that thence result are not the same to both sexes: but the bastards of the white men and Hottentot women  
have



have in them the seeds of every vice, and of every irregularity.

Such, in general, is the information which I acquired myself, by living among the Hottentots. But I shall stop here lest I fatigue the reader's patience by these dry details; and return to them only when I may have an opportunity of mentioning them without being tedious in my relation of the different events of my journey.

As I proposed to pass a considerable time in Africa, my first care was to study the language of the inhabitants; and I indeed succeeded beyond expectation. The language of these people being very poor, has no occasion for words to express abstract and metaphysical ideas; it is susceptible of no ornament. Though it has neither elegant phrases nor a correct syntax, its difficulties are no less insurmountable to those who are destitute of genius and patience. I have however been too well rewarded for the pains I bestowed on this part of my labours, by the pleasure I enjoyed of being able to converse freely with these people, ever to regret that I added a knowledge of this singular dialect to that of several other languages which have  
been

been the principal object of the very severe education I received.

The Hottentot language has no resemblance, as several ancient authors pretend, “ to the “ gabbling of turkeys when they fight, to “ the cry of the magpye, or the screaming “ of an owl;” much less do its sounds imitate the cry of the bat, according to Pliny and Herodotus: to judge that it cannot resemble all these things at the same time, we need only compare with one another all its different assimilations. It is equally false, that, to hear Hottentots conversing together, one would take them for a company of stammerers. From all these assertions, which are absolutely contradictory and destroy each other, we are naturally led to think that no traveller, who has spoken of the Hottentot language, has so carefully studied it as to give a clear and precise idea of it; and consequently, without enquiring into the causes of their profound ignorance, I may assert that they have been as really deceived themselves as they have deceived others.

This language, notwithstanding its singularity, and the difficulty of pronouncing it,

is not so discouraging as it at first appears. It may be learnt by perseverance; I have known planters who spoke it fluently, and I myself was able to make myself understood in a short time. It is, however, in general, very difficult for every European; but more so for a Frenchman than for a Dutchman, a German, &c. especially as the *u*, the *h*, and the *g* are pronounced in the same manner as in the languages of the two latter; that is to say, the *u*, *ou*; and the other two letters by expirations, for which the throat of a Frenchman is not formed, and which he catches with great difficulty.

Of all the vocabularies hitherto published in different works, there is none by which a single word can be comprehended. It would be in vain to attempt to use them, for one never could be understood; and a Hottentot would never suspect that he heard his own language. It would appear as if the authors of these vocabularies had purposely suppressed the only mark which often forms the whole signification of the words; for they have made no mention of different clappings with the tongue, which are indispensable

pensable signs that precede or separate the words, and without which they would have no clear or precise meaning.

These clappings are of three kinds, all very different from each other. The first, which I shall distinguish by this mark ( $\Delta$ ), the simplest, softest, easiest to be executed, and that which is most used, is performed by pressing the tongue to the palate, against the incisive teeth, while the mouth is shut; then, by quickly detaching the tongue, and opening the mouth at the same time, this clapping is heard; which is nothing else than that small noise, very familiar to us, when, harassed by a tiresome person, we wish to shew, without speaking, that we have lost all patience.

The second clapping ( $v$ ) is more sonorous than the first. It is sufficient, in order to form it, to detach the tongue from the middle of the palate, and to imitate the noise which grooms employ to make a horse go faster. In this case no force is necessary, but simply to detach the tongue, and the sound is produced of itself. Were the sound too distinct, it would be impossible, or at least

very difficult, to join it as it ought to the first syllable of the word that must follow it.

Greater force must be given to the third kind of clapping ( $\Delta$ ), which is pronounced with more energy, and is heard more distinctly. It is the least used, and appears to be the most difficult; for it requires great care and attention to adapt it properly to the word that follows it, as it is performed by a singular contraction of the tongue, which is drawn back to the extremity of the palate near the throat. It may be readily conceived, that, after this contraction of the tongue, considerable force is employed to push it towards the lips, and to articulate the words that must follow it, without any appearance of rest or interruption.

These different clappings have also a different modulation, and may be more or less difficult to be executed, according to the letter or syllable which they strike, and with which, as I have already said, they must be united, not to pervert the sense. In this the strength of the pronunciation of the language may be said to consist.

All these differences appear very harsh to

the ear of an European, and very difficult to be acquired. Such indeed they appeared to me at first, but one soon becomes accustomed to them; and I can assert that this language, upon the whole, is not destitute of harmony, and that in the mouth of a Hottentot woman it has its charms, as the German has its beauties in that of an amiable Saxon lady.

I am of opinion that, if people should attempt to study this language from the vocabularies hitherto published, and to speak it without being otherwise instructed in its principles, they would lose themselves in words void of sense, and the result would be nothing else but confusion—a disgusting chaos, in which the harassed imagination would find only ridiculous absurdity.

There are a few words indeed which may be employed without this clapping of the tongue, but such exceptions are very rare.

To prove how necessary these different sounds produced by the tongue are to shew the signification of the words, and how they determine the synonimes and different meanings, I shall give an example, as it will render this subject much easier to be comprehended. In the Hottentot language *aâp* sig-

nifies a horse and an arrow; it is also the name of a river: the difference alone in the clapping of the tongue determines the precise idea which it is meant to convey. Pronounced simply, without any collision, it signifies a *horse*; with the second clapping, of which I have spoken, it signifies a *river*; and, with the third, it signifies an *arrow*. In the like manner  $\Delta$ -ou ip is a rock;  $\Delta$ -ou ip, the name of the bustard;  $\Delta$ -ka ip, that of a venomous serpent; and  $\Delta$ -ka ip, a kind of African antelope.

Besides these three kinds of clapping, which as may be easily seen, are indispensably necessary, certain parts of some words are nothing else but sounds formed in the throat; but it is impossible to describe them, and they can be imprinted in the memory only by long practice. I shall distinguish them by a small cross placed over the letter where they are to be used.

To be more scrupulously exact, I must add, that one word often has two different significations, by the brevity or weak sound of one of its vowels.

From what I have said, it may be easily seen how difficult it would be to write this language

language in such a manner as to be read and pronounced with that precision which is necessary. It would first of all be requisite to form a particular alphabet for it; and to accustom oneself to these clappings, would be the principal step towards success. But as the study of this language will never form a part of the education of our young men of fortune, who have no desire for being sent so far to learn how to behave in polite company; and as, on the other hand, it would be of no utility to fatigue the reader by a tiresome dictionary, which he would not read; I shall suppress it, and for the satisfaction of the curious give a few words only which concern natural history.

Should any naturalist be desirous of travelling through the same country, it would be of great advantage to him to be able to name to the Hottentots any animal, or other object, which he might wish to procure. An exact vocabulary of those things which might principally engage his attention, would undoubtedly be found useful to him, and cannot even here displease any one. I should have thought myself very happy had any traveller before me smoothed the first difficulties of



this language; for a dictionary of it would have rendered the commencement of my researches less disgusting and less laborious. I therefore consider it as a part of my duty to present here what I so much wished for myself, and to subjoin the primitive names of the greater part of the animals of Africa, such as they have always been known and distinguished by the Hottentots of the deserts. I have added also those given them by the planters at the Cape of Good Hope.

It must be observed that the Hottentots of the colonies, having in part forgotten their language, disfigure what remains by a mixture of corrupted Dutch; so that, without mentioning other inconveniences which thence arise, animals change their names, or have several different ones, according to the different cantons or colonies where they are found. This produces a confusion very difficult to be cleared up, and is one reason for preferring the nomenclature of the natives, whose language, always the same, is secured from experiencing any change or variation.

<i>English Names.</i>	<i>Dutch Names.</i>	<i>Hottentot Names</i>
The Elephant	Oliphant	Δ—Goap
The Rhinoceros	Renoster	v—Nabap
The Hippopotamus	Zee Koe	v—Kaous
The Giraffe	Kameel Paerd	Δ—Na-ïp
The Buffalo	Beuffle	Δ—Ka-oop
The Pafan	Gems-Bock	Δ—Kaïp
The Koedoe	Coudoe	v—Koudou, or Gaïp
The Bubale	Harte-Beest	Δ—Kamap
The Zebra	Welde-Paerd	v—Kouarep
The Quaga	Quaga, or Welde Ezel	v—Nou-v-Kouarep
		+
The Hare	Haaze	Δ—Ou amp
		+
A Marmot	Das	v—Ka oup
The Wild Boar	Welde-Varke	v—Kou-Goop
The Ant Bear	Erd-Varke	Δ—Goup
The Porcupine	Yzer-Varke	v—Nou ap
A Dog	Hond	Δ—Harip
Dogs	Honden	Δ—Harina
A Rat	Rott	Douroup
A Bat	Vleer-Muyfe	Δ--Nouga-Bouroup
A Lion	Leuw	Gamma
A Tiger	Tyger	Garou-Gamma
		+
A Tiger Cat	Tyger-Kat	Δ—Ou amp
The Hyæna	Wolf	Δ—Hirop
The Wild Dog	Welde-Hond	Δ—Goup
The Jackal	Jakals	Δ—Dirip
The Horfe	Paerd	Aap
A Bull	Beull	Karamap
A Cow	Koe	Goumas
An Ox	Ofs	Goumap
A Sheep	Schaap	Goou
A Goat	Bock	Bri-i
A She-Goat	Gytt	Tararé bris
A Bird	Voogel	Δ—Kanip
The Bustard	Trap-Gans	Δ—Ou ip
The French Field Duck	Kor-Haan	Δ—Haragap
A Pheasant	Fefant	Koa Koa, or v— Kabos
A Martin	Welde Swaluw	Δ—O-atfi Δ—nam- bro
A Partridge	Patrys	Δ—Ouri-Kinas
		A Quail

<i>English Names.</i>	<i>Dutch Names.</i>	<i>Hottentot Names.</i>
A Quail	Kwartel	Δ—Kabip
A Sparrow	Mofs	v—Kabari
A Vulture	Aas-Voogel	Δ—Gha ip
		+
A Wild Goose	Welde-Gans	Gaamp
		+
Mountain Duck	Berg-Eend	Δ-Karo hei gaamp
The Phenicopteros	Flamingo	Δ—Gaorip
A Turtle Dove	Tortel-Duyf	Δ—Neis
A Mountain	Berg	Δ—Oumma
A Rock	Klep	Δ—Oup
		Δ—Karip
A River	Rivier	v—Aap
A Fountain	Fontyn	Δ—Aaup
The Sea	Zée	Hourip
A Tree	Boom	Haip
A Waggon	Waage	Kouri-ïp
A Flower	Blom	Δ—Narina
Milk	Melck	Deip
Water	Waater	v—Kama
Flesh	Vleesch	v—Gaaus
Fish	Vis	Δ—Ko oup
A Spider	Spen	Δ—Hous
A Camelion		v—Karou-Koup
A Butterfly	Kapelle	Tabou Tabou
		+
Three different kinds of Antelope	Ree Bock	Gnioop
		+
	Duyker	Δ—A oup
	Steen-Bock	Δ—Harip
A Fly	Vlig	Δ—Dinap
A Serpent	Slang	Δ—Kanou-Goup
A Tortoise	Schil-Pad	Δ—Ouna
A Toad	Pade	v—Oorokoop
The Guana	Egouane	v—Naseep
A Fufee	Snaphan	Δ—Kabooup
An Arrow	Peyl	Δ—Aap
A Bow	Boog	Kgaap
An Assagay	Sagaye	Δ—Aure-Koop
An European	Europées	v—Orée-Goep
A Negro	Swarte-Jong	Kabop
		+
A Hottentot man	Hottentot	+
		Khoé-Khoep
		+
A Hottentot wo- man	Hottentoten	Tararé-Khoes

From what I have said of the manners and simplicity of this nation, one may be easily convinced that their language is poor, and that before the arrival of the Europeans it must have been still poorer. The latter introduced new objects, to which it was necessary to give names; and on this account the Hottentots of the colonies have expressions neither used nor understood by the savage Hottentots, to whom the greater part of these objects are unknown.

However this may be, there is always in this language a great affinity between the thing and the word by which it is distinguished. For example, they call a fusée *Δ-ka-booup*; and, by the manner in which it ought to be pronounced, the clapping of the tongue, and the first syllable *Δ-ka*, imitate the noise of the cock when it falls, and that of the opening of the pan; in short, the word *booup* conveys, in a striking manner, an idea of the explosion or report. In general the Hottentot language is very expressive; and as these people, when they speak, always gesticulate, and represent in pantomime whatever they say, a superficial knowledge of their

their idiom is sufficient to enable one easily to comprehend the most important things.

Three weeks had now elapsed since the departure of my envoys; but I was not the first to form any reflections on the cause of their delay: I always kept my uneasiness to myself, not wishing to occasion any to those around me; for, by not concealing my suspicions, I should only have supplied them with arms to destroy my projects. They could not, without sadness, think on my determined resolution of penetrating into Caffraria. I sometimes surpris'd my people discoursing on this subject, and more or less murmuring against their master; but at bottom they were still attached to me, and in their conversation I was the principal object of their agitation and fear. They did not hesitate to call me a rash man, who, apparently caring very little for his life, obstinately wished to make them sharers with him in a most melancholy fate, by conducting them to destruction. I had too much reason to apprehend that they had all agreed to quit me, in case I should persist in my resolutions; and I judg'd that nothing embarrassed them but the manner of executing their

their

their plot. I however discovered, that of twenty-five conspirators there were not two who concurred in opinion: those whom I had engaged in my service in the course of my journey, saw no great difficulties in this secret departure; but those whom I had engaged at the house of Mr. Mulder, in the country of Auteniqua, and at the Cape under the auspices of the fiscal, doubted much whether they should return or not to the town. In a word, they could neither agree among themselves, nor form any resolution.

They accused me of having sacrificed the envoys; and indeed it must be owned that their long absence appeared extraordinary. From what Hans told me, three or four days at most were sufficient for them to go to the residence of king Pharoo; and allowing as many for them to stay there, and the same number to return, I found, by this plain calculation, that more than double the time necessary for the journey had already elapsed. I therefore began to imagine that some accident had befallen them, or that the suspicions of the Caffres had proved fatal to these unhappy people. I did not however lose all hopes of seeing them again; but I remained  
wavering

wavering in uncertainty, neither knowing what to think nor what orders to give to the rest of my troop, to put an end to their disputes and uneasiness. My brave Klaas was of opinion that we ought still to wait, and to suffer such of my mutinous attendants as shewed most impatience and ill humour to depart when they thought proper.

In the mean time I assumed an air of tranquillity, and continued my hunting excursions as usual; but a secret impulse conducted me, as it were mechanically, to that quarter in which I hoped to see my deputies arrive. In the evening, being quite dejected because they had not appeared, I returned to my camp, in order to recommence the same useless and melancholy walk next morning. Thus do we sport with the imagination, when we are in hopes of finding the object that we ardently wish for.

One evening at length Klaas came, and shut himself up with me in my tent, in order to give the finishing stroke to my uneasiness, by informing me that he had lost every hope, and that Hans and his companions were without doubt assassinated; that the fuses, ammunition, and arms which they carried  
I along

along with them had tempted the Caffres; and that this was sufficient to induce that nation, then at war, in want of every thing useful for their defence, and particularly iron, to commit murder: and he advised me not to fatigue the rest of my troop any longer; for, without their assistance, we should be able neither to advance nor to return.

I was perfectly sensible of the force of this reasoning, dictated by the sincerest concern for my person, and the safety of my effects, which I should have been obliged to leave behind me for want of people to assist me in transporting them. I was almost on the point of giving way to the advice of Klaas, and of renouncing my solemn engagement of not quitting Kocks-Kraal, the only rendezvous where these generous envoys could meet their master, when we observed at a distance one of the four people who watched my cattle running towards my camp, seemingly alarmed and out of breath. Having told me that he had just seen, on the other side of the river a considerable body of Caffres who were preparing to cross it, this information at first struck a great terror into all my attendants; while I alone, still flattered with  
the



the chimerical hopes of again seeing my people turned the whole of my thoughts towards them. As the numerous band which had been announced to me did not correspond with my expectations, and destroyed the whole illusion, I dispatched four fusileers, under the command of Klaas, to search for my oxen, and to bring them all to my camp; desiring him, after he had performed this service, to examine these strangers, without discovering himself, to learn whether they were so numerous as I had been taught to believe, and whether any thing suspicious appeared in their behaviour. I told him also to watch their motions, in order that he might be enabled to judge what was their intention; and I besides strictly enjoined him that, in case he met my envoys, he should immediately inform me, by commanding his people to discharge their fuses; but, if the body seen were Caffres, to place himself in ambush, and to dispatch one of his companions to my camp. Just as he was departing, the whole of my cattle arrived, with the three other keepers; who, like their comrades, had been struck with great terror.

As for me, I examined all my arms, and  
ordered

ordered them to be loaded, though I had no intention of being the first to commence hostilities: but, as I proposed to wait resolutely for the enemy, I was determined also to make every resistance in my power; and it was proper that I should be prepared for such an event.

I confess that I was not free from uneasiness: not that I dreaded the event of the battle, for my arms gave me too much confidence in my superiority; but I should have been extremely sorry to have been under the necessity of engaging before we had come to an explanation. By such a step I should have ruined all my hopes: the pacific intentions which I had always professed, and which alone could have entitled me to the privilege of traversing all Caffraria in liberty; being belied by such acts of hostility, I should have been ranked with the planters, those barbarous assassins of the savages, and must have been considered as an enemy whose whole caravan deserved to be exterminated.

Whilst I was making all my preparations, my mind was agitated by a variety of reflections; from which I was however suddenly freed, by a discharge that was a signal of joy

to my whole camp: after the orders I had given to Klaas, no doubt was entertained that he had fallen in with my messengers. Notwithstanding this favourable appearance, my people were not yet entirely freed from their apprehensions, and I found it very difficult to calm them entirely. The three keepers of my flocks, above all, persisted to affirm, that in the whole troop of Caffres they had not observed a single Hottentot; and thus suddenly passing from hope to fear, they wished to insinuate, that the reports which had been heard were too evident signs that an action had taken place, and that Klaas was engaged with the enemy.

At the turning of a little hill however, which was distant about three hundred paces from us, I saw Klaas himself make his appearance, but alone. By the help of my spy-glass I could perfectly distinguish his easy carriage, and even the features of his face, which seemed to announce nothing alarming; but I was more fully convinced when I perceived, some minutes after, the whole troop advancing the same way, in good order, towards the camp. My Hottentots, mixed with the Caffres, gave me reason to conclude that

that they were in perfect harmony with one another; and, as they approached nearer, I distinguished Hans. I then ordered all the arms to be laid aside, and bid my people appear as calm and serene as possible.

I was very impatient to receive my deputies, and to learn from their own mouths what risques I could run for them and myself without danger. I did not however think proper to go to meet them, or to quit my small arsenal, until I had heard what these travellers had to relate. When the Caffres found themselves within throw of an assagay, they all stopped; and Hans, quitting the troop, came straight towards me. In a few words he told me, that I was at liberty to pursue my journey into Caffraria; that I should be exposed to no risque; that I would be respected as a friend; that the nation he had quitted invited me in the most pressing manner not to put off the time any longer, and that they would receive me with pleasure; that I might judge of their general intentions by the confidence which they shewed, and by the liberty which several of them had taken to come and pay me a visit; that they offered me their friendship, and requested

mine; and, in a word, that they had quitted their own country on the assurances made to them that I would give them a favourable reception.

With regard to the delay which had alarmed us so much, Hans informed me that, when he arrived among the Caffres, he could not find king Pharoo, who had retired to the distance of thirty leagues from the usual place of his residence: that after waiting some time in hopes of seeing him return, fearing that he should not be able to accomplish the business for which he was sent, he had resolved to go in search of him; but learning from a new horde that the chief had again set out, and that no one knew what route he would pursue, or how long he would be absent, he had desisted from this attempt. Some believed that the prince was gone towards the colonies; and others that he intended to visit the *Tambouchis*, a nation bordering on Caffraria, with whom they carried on a trade for iron and arms. He added, that finding it impossible to execute my orders, and not knowing what course to pursue, he thought it would be best to return, and bring back my two Hottentots;

tentots; but that, from the favourable accounts which he had given of my character, and pacific disposition, several of the Caffres offered of their own accord to accompany him, and in their turn to come as a deputation, to assure me of the general goodwill which the whole inhabitants bore towards me; and that, being fully convinced I was not a Dutch planter, they would receive me as a friend, and even as a protector.

These Caffres trusted that I would enable them to be revenged on a certain planter of Bruyntjes-Hoogte, against whom they had dismal complaints to make, and whose name alone inspired them with horror. I indeed afterwards received some details respecting the life of this wretch, and particular considerations prevent me from here exposing his name; but the crimes which have rendered him a monster are not unknown to any inhabitant of the Cape. In vain has the government repeatedly summoned him to appear at its tribunal, to answer for his conduct; entrenched in territories where the laws are inactive, and without force, the orders of the governor, the threats of his

subalterns, and all their decrees, are to him only signals for committing fresh crimes.

Without entering further into conversation, or asking more questions, which would have been unseasonable, I gave permission to the Caffres to advance. Hans therefore made a sign to them with his hand, and in a moment I found myself surrounded. Without comprehending my envoys, there were in all nineteen men, five women, and two young children. They saluted me, one after the other, by the word *tabè*, which I knew as well as they, and which was all the answer I made to their compliments; but I understood very little of their language. In their pronounciation they did not employ that clapping used by the Hottentots; but what shewed their difference from the Gonaquas most sensibly, was their manner of saluting. They all spoke together, and with a precipitation and volubility which appeared to me so much the stranger, as I had been for almost a year accustomed to the slow manner of my indolent Hottentots. I could not conceive to what cause this confused noise which buzzed in my ears was to be imputed; and

and I lost all patience, because I could not catch any distinct sound.

Though I could not comprehend what these Caffres said to one another, I observed that their attention was very much engaged, either with my camp, my person, or my people, and their different motions. Their eyes roved with rapidity from one object to another; and every thing in turns struck them with surprize. I have somewhere read that astonishment indicates ignorance; but ignorance does not prove want of abilities. This reflection may be applied to the Caffres, for undoubtedly they cannot be accused of stupidity; and between them and the Hottentots there is a vast distance, in respect to ingenuity and industry. Hans had boasted much to them of my double-barrelled fuzees and pistols; and from his account they were inclined to consider my arms as wonderful things. One of them, in the name of all the rest, having asked permission to see them, I ordered them to be brought forth; and I shewed them to them without manifesting the least suspicion. Being handed about from one to another, they were examined and turned over with the most minute at-



tention; but their eager curiosity required something more. This I expected, and I luckily had an opportunity of gratifying them. Observing two swallows cleaving the air before me, I fired at them, and they fell at the distance of a few paces from us. This sudden action, performed with the utmost composure, redoubled their astonishment; and they knew not which most to admire, the arms, or the person who used them. It is certain that this lucky stroke, which might not have succeeded, inspired them with the highest idea of my skill; and I took advantage of it to impress them with a deeper sense of my superiority. I asked them, by signs, whether they could do the same with their assagays; but they shook their heads with a smile, and gave me to understand, that with these weapons it was impossible to kill a bird flying. One of them, however, rising up, pointed to my sheep, which were feeding at some distance, and signified that he and his companions could strike them running, as well as other quadrupedes, whether of greater or less size. Hans then presented to me a young Caffre, who was perfectly well formed, and whose person immediately

diately prepossessed me in his favour. Before this period I had never seen any of these people but, as one may say, in a rude state. I however could not be satisfied with contemplating this youth; and his companions assured me that he was considered in the country as one of those who were most expert in throwing the assagay and the short club\*; and that his dexterity in this respect had acquired him great reputation. I had heard so much of the Caffres, and of their formidable arms, that I eagerly embraced this opportunity of being convinced, by my own eyes, what a young Caffre could do who was only eighteen years of age, and who boasted of his skill with so much simplicity. As it was near dinner time, and as I proposed to regale all these people, as well as my own, I sent for a sheep; and pointing to it with my finger, I gave the youth permission to take aim at it. In his left hand he held five assagays, one of which,

\* A kind of weapon used in the same manner as the assagay. I have a small and a large one in my collection.

at my desire, he grasped in his right; and the sheep, being let loose, began to run towards the flock. In the mean time he brandished his assagay with force; darted forward by four or five rapid leaps, and having discharged the weapon, it flew through the air with a whizzing noise, and pierced the sides of the animal; which staggered, and dropped down dead on the spot.

On this occasion I could not conceal my joy and my surprize. So much skill and strength, added to gracefulness, excited the admiration of all my people. Vanity is an universal passion; but it is modified according to manners and climates. In Europe it sparkles in the eyes and in every feature of a beautiful woman, and inspires her with haughtiness; it is the soul of talents, and gives birth to masterpieces of every kind; it conceals itself even under the coarsest attire and rags. In Africa, a savage cannot hide it: the testimonies of approbation which we all bestowed upon my young Caffre, elevated his looks, and made the muscles of his face expand. Proud of such a triumph, and of my applauses, his feet no longer

longer touched the earth; he measured my height, stood close by my side, and seemed to say, In what am I inferior to you?

His own countrymen were no less charmed with his success: they fixed their eyes upon me, and endeavoured to discover by my looks what effect this specimen of skill had produced in my mind.

I had afterwards several opportunities of observing, that these people want nothing but an able chief at their head, and good order established among them, to destroy the Hottentot nation, and all the colonies; but the superiority of our arms will render their courage and dexterity of no avail, whilst they have no other weapons for their defence but assagays,

After drawing his lance from the body of the animal, the young Caffre struck the iron point of it several times into the sand, and carefully wiped it with a handful of grass.

I was extremely sorry that I could not explain myself properly to these strangers; the length of time required for interpretation, and perhaps the narrow conception of the interpreter, excited my impatience to such a degree

degree that I could scarcely contain it. On the other hand, being more open and lively than the Hottentots, and having in their character nothing approaching to their taciturnity, these people gained upon me in volubility; and from the time of their arrival I had done nothing but return answers to those questions with which their curiosity continually teased me. As I wished rather to be informed than to inform, I flattered myself with the hopes of seeing their volubility of words and confused gestures soon at an end; and that at length I also should have my turn, when their first effervescence had subsided,

More provident than the Hottentots, and trusting less to chance for their subsistence, they had not set out, as we commonly say, without full pockets. They had brought along with them several oxen intended for provision, and four more to carry their baggage. Nor had they forgot those beautiful baskets which I had admired so much among the Gonaquas; and which they proposed to exchange by the way, or with us, on very advantageous terms. They had also some cows with their calves; so that this caravan  
had

had an air of wealth and opulence which one could not expect to find in the dismal valleys of Savoy.

I marked out, at some distance from my camp, the precise spot where I wished them to lodge; and being more fortunate or better obeyed than Idomeneus, when he built the city of Salentum, in the space of a few minutes I saw a small colony rising before me.

When our fires were kindled, the sheep was cut into pieces and roasted; and in a little time nothing remained of it but the skin. I was not ignorant how powerful an agent interest is to move all men, and how much it tends to dispose them to benevolence. In my present situation I put in practice this principle, which had so often succeeded with me before. Being desirous of gaining over these Caffres as I had gained the first savages I met with, and particularly the Gonaquas, I distributed among my guests different kinds of toys, and a certain quantity of tobacco. They received my presents with great satisfaction, and each immediately began to use them.

But what chiefly engaged their attention, and what they would have gladly pilfered from

from me, was iron. They devoured it with their eyes, extolling it highly, and seeming to value it above every thing else. Happening to see some hatchets, pick-axes, large augers, and utensils of every kind, which were behind my waggons, they coveted them with a sort of impatience, and only wanted an opportunity to lay their hands upon them. I however well knew in what manner savages ought to be treated; and I was so little afraid of them, that, even if I had not been so well armed, I should have willingly given up these objects to them; but, as I carried along with me so many implements, they were become so indispensably necessary, that it was impossible for me to be generous, and sacrifice them. Nevertheless, in order that I might destroy their desire, or at least weaken its ardour, since I could not deprive them of a knowledge of these valuable utensils, I ordered them to be carefully concealed. From what I had learned of the embarrassment under which these savages were with respect to their arms, I found that it was indeed dangerous to expose them to temptation any longer, as it might induce them to form resolutions prejudicial to my repose, and to get possession

possession of those articles by stratagem, if they could not by open force. Such in general is the character of the real savage, and such is nature. No one has a right to retain that which belongs to all, and the least inequality would be a source of the greatest misfortunes. Whoever has read *Captain Cook's Voyages to the South Seas*, must have remarked that this navigator and his crew never landed without sustaining some loss; the islanders robbed them even in their vessel, carried away the arms of those who were sent out on hunting parties, and stole the sailors clothes, &c. Dr. Forster informs us that Dr. Sparmann, after being robbed of his sword, lost also in the same excursion two-thirds of his clothes. The Caffres and the Hottentots have not yet attained to that degree of dexterity; but they are not entirely free from blame in this respect. To live on friendly terms with them, people must wink at many petty losses, or lock up their property carefully.

I had a convincing proof of the pressing necessity under which the Caffres were of procuring iron. I blamed myself for having made them advance perhaps too soon, and



for not having taken proper precautions. I however followed them, and gave orders that they should be narrowly watched; and both I and Klaas perceived, though not without uneasiness, by the manner in which they conversed together, and measured the length and thickness of the bands that surrounded the wheels of my carriages, how much delighted they were with this treasure. Had these people been able to read, and had they found in certain books, replete with excellent morality, which are common in the hands of our ladies of fashion, that the simplest means of resisting temptation is to yield to it—this maxim, which is rather too philosophical, would not have been considered by the Caffres as a pleasantry, much less as an absurdity, and my ruin would have been unavoidable.

The jealous and suspicious eyes of my Hottentots were however still attentive to every thing that passed; and, as if my own remarks had not been sufficient, they came every moment to add theirs, and to entertain me with some new scene. I easily guessed their motives, for I every moment saw a spirit of discord fomenting amongst them:  
and

and it was then that, taking the whole blame, I justly reproached myself for occasioning the sensible coolness I remarked among my people, which my too great precipitation had given rise to; and I regretted that I had very unseasonably stopped at Bruyntjes-Hoogte, to solicit the assistance of all the planters, who by their speeches frightened my people, and disturbed the harmony of my caravan: so true it is that the success of every enterprise depends upon secrecy.

At this time I indeed saw nothing to alarm me: for we had too great a superiority over our guests, both in strength and in arms, had it been necessary to have recourse to violence, the last means which ought to be employed with savages. I had no occasion to be apprehensive of any surprise on their part, as the spot I had assigned them was so situated that the smallest attempt would have occasioned their destruction; but this did not prevent me from redoubling my precautions and severity, both to keep my people to their duty, and to convince my guests that they could neither attack me openly, nor by stratagem, with any hopes of success. If I except two of my chasseurs whom I every day

sent to procure provisions, and four other people who guarded my cattle at pasture, there was not one of them that ever went out of my sight. As for me, I remained continually in my camp, where I spent whole days in conversing with the Caffres, and in making an interpreter explain their answers to those questions which I every moment put to them, from a desire of being instructed, and receiving certain information respecting this nation, still less known than that of the Hottentots. Our mutual embarrassment, and the difficulty of translating our different expressions, wasted, I must own, a great deal of time. The knowledge I acquired every day came so slowly, and amounted to so little, that I spent a whole week in these laborious conversations: but finding at length nothing but affability and probity amongst them, and being convinced that they acted sincerely and without deceit, I was under much less restraint: I laid aside some of my reserve, and obliged all my people to be perfectly easy amongst them.

In a little time, a better acquaintance with their language rendered our conversations much more interesting: I began to make my-

self understood, and I comprehended much better what they said to me.

They were continually importuning me to follow them to their country, and they twenty times repeated all those inducements which my interpreter had mentioned on his arrival. I was indeed too much inclined to listen to these seducing invitations; but it never was my intention to set out with them: the reason of this will be seen hereafter. I therefore begged to be excused, telling them that it was impossible for me to get ready so soon as they wished; and then examining them all in the strictest manner, I added, that, not being acquainted with their country myself, I had been told that it was filled with mountains and woods, difficult to be passed, and that on this account I could not carry my oxen and carriages along with me. They appeared to be very little affected with this declaration; and from the pleasure which they seemed to testify on my promising soon to pay them a visit, I judged that they had no great hopes of getting possession of my large pick-axes, and the iron that surrounded the wheels of my waggons.

In proportion, however, as I expressed

my friendship towards them, and made them promises, I observed their vengeance kindle up in their countenances, and that they seemed to place their only hopes of safety in me. They held many conferences, pressed close one to another, and sufficiently shewed by their gestures the high opinion which they had formed of my strength, and of my sincere desire to serve them. The name of the ferocious inhabitant of Bruyntjes-Hoogte was continually in their mouths; and one of them, shaking his head through spite and rage, told me that, among other victims, his wife ready to lie-in, and two children, had been butchered by the hand of this planter; and that a thirst of blood had hurried him to this crime, merely from a pleasure of committing it. However shocking the following anecdote may appear, I must give it a place here, in the same manner in which it was told me, and as it has been since certified to me more than twenty times.

At a time when the planters and the Cafres lived on good terms together, and had no reason to fear or to persecute each other, the tiger of Bruyntjes-Hoogte, who was disconcerted by this harmony, and who could

not be happy except when surrounded by carnage and slaughter, in hopes of stirring up the flames of war, and reviving ancient quarrels, thought proper to procure from the town a few gun-barrels, which were of no more value than old iron. Having easily found means to exchange them with the Caffres, who are always in want of such things, before he delivered them he spiked up the touch-holes, put a double charge of powder into each of them, and filled them with nails and pieces of iron, which he rammed into them up to the mouth. The unhappy savages, who were not acquainted with fire-arms but from their effects, and who knew nothing of their mechanism, carried home their barrels, and prepared to form them into assagays. The fires being kindled, and the fatal barrels put into them, as soon as they grew hot the powder took fire, and produced a dreadful explosion, which in a moment scattered the immense furnace, the workmen, and their instruments; and even wounded a great many who stood at a considerable distance. One of them who told me this circumstance, of which the whole horde were witnesses, made me count the wounds he received by this tragical ex-

periment, and the indelible scars with which his whole body was covered.

One anecdote of this nature is sufficient to justify the implacable hatred which rages in the rankled breasts of the Caffres; and which we may even say that they bring into the world with them. Why, therefore, should we consider as the effects of a disposition naturally ferocious, those sudden and unexpected attacks, which are only at bottom just reprisals? Nature has not been more a step-mother to the Caffres than to any other savage nation; all equally revolt at injustice and tyranny; and the calmest and most peaceable beings that we know, the Caribs of the southern coasts of America, are transformed into furious lions, if any inconsiderate invader only dares to attack them in their humble retreats.

If the Caffres, when oppressed by persecution, and continually plundered and harassed, have been induced to commit acts of cruelty; if their plans for being revenged have sometimes succeeded; and if they have trod down and destroyed crops, burnt plantations, and massacred the proprietors, the white people lent them their fury, by giving  
ing

ing them examples of the most horrid outrages.

The hatred of the Caffres is still unfortunately extended to a part of the Hottentots, whom the insidious and treacherous policy of the planters has perverted, and engaged in their conspiracies, in order to lessen those risques to which the method necessary to be pursued with the Caffres exposes them, and to be able to meet them upon an equal footing. These precautions, however, are often of no avail against the address and active vigilance of the enemy. The Hottentot, too timid, and too badly armed, to shew himself openly, depends much upon stratagem: taking upon himself the office of spy, he silently reconnoitres the posts occupied by the adverse party; and, above all, those where their treasures are deposited. But the piercing eye of the Caffre soon discovers his secret motions; and darting upon the spy like an arrow, he instantly sacrifices him to his vengeance.

By studying this nation, so much aspersed, every day more and more, I began to entertain a no less favourable opinion of them than I did of that of the Hottentots; and



from my own principles, and manner of behaving to the savages, I could not allow myself to think that I was in any danger from either of them. My hours, the pleasures and occupations of which I continually varied, rolled on like the past, without trouble and without uneasiness. I had begun my hunting excursions, and my guests followed me in turns; but I chose to be accompanied, in preference to any other, by my young Caffre, who afforded me the satisfaction of seeing sometimes a gnou fall by his hand, and sometimes other animals, which he killed with his formidable assagay with as much dexterity as he had shewn in piercing the sheep. In one of our hunting parties he assisted me to kill a male hippopotamus of an extraordinary size; it was the only one we had met with, and perhaps the only one to be found in the compass of ten miles; the firing of our fuses, which thundered on all sides from morning till night, had undoubtedly frightened all the rest. I did not find in this one that flavour which had given me so much pleasure in the first female I killed. My people pretended that it was too old; and that, besides, a female was always superior in delicacy.

delicacy. Its fat had a more solid consistence, but it was not so thick as that of the females, which differs in nothing from what we call in France *petit salé* ; but, above all, it was disgustingly rancid, except for the palate of a Hottentot. The Caffres, who are not so fond of grease as the Hottentots, set no great value upon it, and preferred the flesh of their oxen. Even the sheep did not tempt them ; and this may sufficiently account for their never breeding any of these animals.

I had not yet taken a near view of the horned cattle which they brought along with them, because at break of day they strayed to the thickets and pastures, and were not brought back by their keepers till the evening. One day, however, having repaired to their kraal very early, I was much surpris'd when I first beheld one of these animals. I scarcely knew them to be oxen and cows : not on account of their being much smaller than ours, since I observed in them the same form, and the same fundamental characteristics, in which I could not be deceived ; but on account of the multiplicity of their horns, and the variety of their different twistings. They had a great resemblance to those ma-  
rine

rine productions, known by naturalists under the name of *stags horns*. Being at this time persuaded that these concretions, of which I had no idea, were a peculiar present of nature, I considered the Caffre oxen as a variety of the species: but I was undeceived by my guests, who informed me that this singularity was only the effect of their invention and taste; and that, by means of a process with which they were well acquainted, they could not only multiply these horns, but also give them any forms that their imagination might suggest. Having offered to exhibit their skill in my presence, if I had any desire of learning their method, it appeared to me so new and uncommon, that I was willing to serve an apprenticeship; and for several days I attended a regular course of lessons on this subject.

They take the animal at as tender an age as possible; and, when the horns begin to appear, they make a small vertical incision in them with a saw, or with any other instrument that may be substituted for it, and divide them into two parts. This division makes the horns, yet tender, separate of themselves; so that in time the animal has  
four

four very distinct ones. If they wish to have six, or even more, several notches made with the saw produce as many as may be required: but if they are desirous of forcing one of these divisions, or the whole horn, to form, for example, a complete circle, they cut away from the point, which must not be hurt, a small part of its thickness; and this amputation, often renewed, and with much patience, makes the horn bend in a contrary direction; and the point meeting the root, it exhibits the appearance of a perfect circle. As it is certain that incision always causes a greater or less degree of bending, it may be readily conceived that every variation that caprice can imagine may be produced by this simple method.

In short, one must be born a Caffre, and have his taste and patience, to submit to that minute care and unwearied attention required for this operation, which in this country can only be useless, but which in other climates would be hurtful: for the horn, thus disfigured, would become weak; whereas, when preserved strong and entire, it keeps at a distance the famished bears and wolves of Europe.

Whilst

Whilst I was among the Caffres, surveying their oxen and utensils, and harassing them with questions respecting their country, their manners, and their customs, my attention was attracted by a hollow noise which seemed to proceed from a great distance, and which struck my ear at certain intervals. Having asked them what it was, and whether they heard it as well as I, they informed me that three or four of their companions were employed at the bottom of a small rock, which they had discovered in the neighbourhood, in forging some arms from bits of old iron they had brought with them, or procured in exchange by the way. Being equally anxious to know whether they had not stole some of my utensils, as curious to learn their manner of proceeding in an operation so difficult for savages, destitute of even the simplest tools, I prevailed on two of them to leave the rest, and to conduct me to the forge. As this unexpected visit, which furnished me with an opportunity of giving these people some information respecting the first mechanism of a forge, of which they had little idea, may have been attended with very important consequences, I must not omit the least circumstance

circumstance of a scene, which was equally new to me as well as to these savages.

The Caffres forge and fabricate their own assagays; but, as they are not acquainted with any of the properties of iron except its malleability, their art does not extend so far as to cast it; and on this account they must have that which has been already wrought. They are wonderfully expert in applying to their own purposes old gun barrels, hoops, and other pieces of iron. Their assagays are of two kinds: in one the handle is entirely of iron, and perfectly round; the other, which is more skilfully, I ought rather to say cruelly, formed, has a square handle, and two of the angles are full of notches inclining downwards, whilst those of the two alternate ones incline in a contrary direction; which occasions a dreadful laceration in the flesh, whether they enter the body or are extracted from it. Their patience cannot fail to excite admiration, when one thinks that with a block of granite, or even common rock, which serves them for an anvil, and a piece of the same substance for a hammer, they fabricate arms as well finished as if they had come from the hands of the most skilful

ful artist. I defy any blacksmith, notwithstanding all his skill, and every effort of his ingenuity, to form any thing, with the two instruments I have mentioned, equal to what is produced by these savages.

Those whom I saw were collected around a huge fire, at the bottom of a rocky eminence, and were drawing from it a pretty large bar of iron, which was red hot. Having placed it on the anvil, they began to beat it with stones exceedingly hard, and of such a figure as rendered them easy to be held and managed in the hand. They seemed to perform their work with much dexterity. But what appeared to me most extraordinary, and afforded me an excellent opportunity of giving them some useful lessons on its mechanism, had they been capable of putting them in practice, was their bellows. Their bellows indeed, which was a most wretched instrument, was composed of a sheep's skin properly stripped off, and well sewed. Those parts that covered the four feet, which had been cut off as useless, and even incommodious, were tied. They had also cut off the head; and placed in the orifice of the neck the mouth of a gun barrel, around which the skin was drawn

drawn together, and carefully fastened. The person who used this instrument, holding the pipe to the fire with one hand, pushed forwards and drew back the extremity of the skin with the other; and though this fatiguing method did not always give intensity to the fire sufficient to heat the iron, yet as these poor Cyclops were acquainted with no other, they were never discouraged. I sincerely pitied them; and the pains they took to accomplish their end, redoubled the pleasure which I enjoyed in pointing out to them an easier and much more effectual process. I had great difficulty to make them comprehend how much superior the bellows of our forges in Europe were to their invention; and being persuaded that the little they might catch of my explanation would soon escape from their memories, and would consequently be of no real advantage to them, I resolved to add example to precept, and to operate myself in their presence. Having dispatched one of my people to our camp, with orders to bring the bottoms of two boxes, a piece of a summer kross, a hoop, a few small nails, a hammer, a saw, and other tools that I might have occasion for—as soon as he returned, I form-  
ed



ed in great haste, and in a very rude manner, a pair of bellows, which were not more powerful than those generally used in our kitchens. Two pieces of hoop, which I placed in the inside, served to keep the skin always at an equal distance; and I did not forget to make a hole in the inferior part, to give a readier admittance to the air—a simple method of which they had no conception, and for want of which they were obliged to waste a great deal of time in filling their sheep's skin. I had no iron pipe; but, as I only meant to make a model, I fixed to the extremity of mine a toothpick case, after sawing off one of its ends. I then placed my instrument on the ground, near the fire; and having fixed a forked stick in the ground, I laid across it a kind of lever, which was fastened to a bit of packthread proceeding from the bellows, and to which was fixed a piece of lead weighing seven or eight pounds. To form a just idea of the surprize of these Caffres on this occasion, one must have seen with what attention they beheld all my operations; the uncertainty under which they were, and their anxiety to discover what would be the event. They could not restrain their acclamations, when

when they saw me by a few easy motions, and with one hand, give their fire the greatest activity, by the velocity with which I made my machine draw in, and again force out the air. Putting some pieces of iron into their fire, I made them in a few minutes red hot, which they undoubtedly could not have done in half an hour. This specimen of my skill raised their astonishment to the highest pitch. I may venture to say that they were almost convulsed and thrown into a delirium. They danced and capered around the bellows; each tried them in turns, and they clapped their hands the better to testify their joy. They begged me to make them a present of this wonderful machine, and seemed to wait for my answer with impatience, not imagining as I judged, that I would readily give up so valuable a piece of furniture. It would afford me great pleasure to hear, at some future period, that they make use of my bellows, that they have brought them to perfection; and, above all, that they preserve a remembrance of that stranger who first supplied them with the most essential instrument in metallurgy.

The inhabitant of Caffraria lives so familiarly

liarly amidst his cattle, and speaks to them with so much mildness, that they pay the most perfect obedience to his voice. As they are never tormented or cruelly treated by their keepers, these pacific animals never use against them those arms which they have received from nature. The owner taking upon himself the care of instructing and cleaning them does not even tie up the cows in order to be milked. If maternal sensations, however, speak forcibly to their instinct, and induce them to keep back their milk for the use of their young, the means employed by the Caffres to compel them to yield it, are much simpler and less disgusting than those employed by the Hottentots. A shackle is put round one of the animals hind feet; a robust man then drags it backwards, and being hurt by this attitude, she immediately suffers her milk to flow. The same method is pursued when a cow has been deprived of her calf. Whether this difference between these cows and those of Europe arises from their nature, their species, or the climate; it is certain that it exists, and that the expedient I have mentioned is necessary, and generally practised by the savages.

The milk is received in baskets of that kind which I have already mentioned, and which are generally made by the women. Their size depends upon fancy, but their form is always the same. Being extremely light, and in no danger of breaking, they are, without doubt preferable to our vessels, of whatever substance they may be. As the women who were in my camp had not forgot their tools, and had brought reeds with them, that they might not remain idle, I amused myself in seeing them weave some of these pretty baskets, which they eagerly exchanged with me for toys, as soon as they had finished them.

Before they drew down the milk into these vessels, they took care to wash them thoroughly; but this was less owing to a turn for cleanliness, than with a design to render them closer in their texture; for, however much prepossessed I may be in favour of these savages, as I profess that it is my intention to say every thing respecting them that I know, I must not conceal even their faults. I must acknowledge, therefore, that the Caffres are constantly accustomed to season their utensils with their own urine;

and that they never give themselves the trouble to search for water, when it is not close at hand.

This method, which they practised before my eyes, was not very delicate. They took care every evening to bring me a basket full of milk, which my people and Kees, much less difficult than their master, gladly accepted. I, however, carefully avoided to shew before my neighbours the invincible disgust which their daily presents gave me; and I would rather have been poisoned for a few moments than have distressed or mortified them by a refusal; for it has always been my maxim, in all the places through which I passed never to oppose received customs. Nothing offends or irritates a people so much as to attack, by satire and ridicule, their opinions, their taste, and their usages; and, indeed, nothing is more absurd and indecent. I am sorry that I have this accusation to make against the most social and the most amiable of nations; and to see them in this respect an object of reproach even to their nearest neighbours. Can it appear strange that one does not observe at London, the air, the manners, and the politeness, of the agreeable cox-  
comb

comb of the banks of the Seine? A man of sense never condemns, in an open manner, any thing that he sees practised in those countries through which he travels; however ridiculous their prejudices may be, he pretends to respect them, because he has no right to oppose them. This method which leaves an open field for reflection, procures him a flattering reception, and those attentions which are due to all men of every country. If there be any case in which the application of these principles is indispensably necessary, it is, above all, with respect to savages. In my opinion, nothing is superior to roast beef and plum pudding, when I dine in England; I would swallow train oil with the Laplander; and, among the Hottentots, contented with their steaks, I could easily forget bread, and consider corn as of no utility.

However strong the attachment of a Caffre may be to his flocks, it is by no means exclusive; he has a violent affection, that even becomes a kind of passion, for his dog, and he shews every attention, and the most extravagant fondness, for this animal; gratitude, therefore, soon induces it to become

his best friend. My pack were never so much cared for, nor so well fed, as during the time that this small horde remained with me: my great Yager, above all, excited their admiration; they continually told me, that he was a most noble animal; and so much were their minds infatuated in this respect, that there was not a single man in the company, who, if I had desired it, would not have given twelve oxen in exchange for him. It must be allowed that Yager was one of the strongest and best made dogs in the colonies. Neither he nor any of his companions ever quitted my guests, with whom they spent the greater part of the day in their kraals. These good people suffered them to lap quietly the milk in their baskets; nor did they ever dare to touch it until these parasites were satisfied. I am firmly persuaded, that these animals, which returned every evening to their kennels, would have been of no service to us, had we been threatened with any danger from the savages. They were so much attached to the Caffres, and had become so little accustomed to my people, that when any of them wandered too far, and returned to the camp later than

than usual, he was obliged to call out to his companions to confine the dogs, to prevent his being attacked, and perhaps torn to pieces.

On the slightest appearance of any treacherous design on the part of the Caffres, I would have ordered my whole pack to be tied up; but, as I saw nothing that could awaken my suspicions, had I prevented them from enjoying the company of my dogs, I should only have mortified them to no purpose, and deprived them of a pleasure which attached them more and more to my person; and I should have besides destroyed that freedom which rendered them every moment more sincere.

Besides, my manner of thinking, in this respect, was peculiar to myself. In vain should I have attempted to make the Hottentots adopt my opinions; for a panic terror keeping them always in continual dread, all my representations and remarks on the openness and affability of these strangers, and even their own imprudent acknowledgments, were not capable of rooting out their prejudices. Caffraria, according to them, was soon to be the tomb which I took a



pleasure to dig with my own hands; and as they refused to be accomplices in my death, they would by no means consent to be the victims of my rashness. Neither the fear of punishment, when I should return to the Dutch settlements, nor my threats of chastising such base deserters on the spot, could move them from their resolution.

This change always appeared to me to be something new; and I was much vexed to see them so obstinate in thwarting my desires, and so forgetful of their duty. I had, it is true, found them refractory and disobedient before I arrived at Bruyntjes-Hoogte, when I saw myself cruelly abandoned by the horde who had for some time travelled along with me, and by the detachment that joined me in the night: but here circumstances were widely different. We had no assurances or promises from the Caffres; we had never before fallen in with any of them; their manners, their character, and their way of living, were entirely unknown to us; prejudice, which is generally strengthened by the absence of danger had always represented them to us as a ferocious and sanguinary people. The scheme of penetrating through their country

as far as the sea, might therefore justly alarm men destitute of firmness and intrepidity; but at this time I could see nothing in their refusal except obstinacy and disobedience, and a certain spirit of disorder, which inspired them with a dislike for the tediousness and fatigue of so long a journey. Other causes, which I did not then know, and which I discovered too late, contributed also to the same end.

Being, however, determined to follow my own plan, and wishing to be accompanied only by people who had never dared to shew the least signs of disobedience, who could boast of having subjected obstacles to my pleasure, and who had never dictated to their chief, as maxims of prudence, what were only the precautions of their fear and pusillanimity, I tormented my imagination, if I may so express it, and made a thousand efforts to devise some means of extricating myself from my disagreeable situation.

I depended upon Klaas as on myself, and I was equally sure of old Swanepoel and my hunter Zean, who had followed me from Milk-Valley, and who killed for me the first *tzeiran* or *blue antelope*: Pit and Adam  
were

were likewise both strongly attached to me; and Narina's cousin, and two of his companions, had offered me their services: but all these three being entirely unacquainted with the use of fire-arms, might be as much afraid of discharging a fusée as of receiving the fire of others. They, however, added to my number, and I hoped to be able to derive some benefit from their assistance. The Greeks who burnt the city of Troy had neither the strength nor the arms of Achilles.

With these eight people I resolved therefore to attempt this journey; but as my plan was not yet properly digested, I thought it would be proper not to give any intimation of my design until the departure of the Caffres, whom I wished above all not to know any thing of it.

A secret, however, which had hitherto escaped me, notwithstanding all my foresight and care, unexpectedly cleared up part of my suspicions. Klaas arriving one afternoon from a hunting excursion, entered my tent, and informed me that four bastard Hottentots were concealed in my camp, and that he suspected them to be spies sent by the planters of Bruyntjes-Hoogte. He understood,

stood, he said, from such part of the conversation of these villains as he could overhear, that the whites knew of the arrival of the Caffres at my camp, and of their residence there; that they all murmured on this account, and were astonished that I should receive their most inveterate enemies with so much cordiality. Klaas strongly urged me to be on my guard until he should learn more; requesting me, above all, to be extremely cautious of trusting one of my people, named Slinger, whom he believed to be privy to their designs, and to co-operate secretly with the four emissaries.

Filled with indignation at the audaciousness of these people, and the assurance which they had to enter my camp, I ordered them immediately to be brought before me. By their timid and embarrassed gait, I could easily perceive their guilt; and I asked them, in a stern manner, by whose orders they had dared to introduce themselves among my people, and to conceal themselves without letting me know, as if they hoped to escape detection. This speech, delivered rather in a harsh tone, my threats of inflicting instant punishment upon them, and the passion  
with

with which all my features were animated, frightened them so much, that they were incapable of returning an answer. I added, that I suffered no spies near me; that I always suspected those who entered my camp privately, and that they deserved to be punished as traitors; that I did not consider them of so much consequence as to proceed to such an extremity; but that they might whatever had been their intention, tell those who sent them every thing they had seen; that being perfectly master of my own will, no one had a right to call me to an account for my actions; that an irreproachable conduct placed me beyond the reach of fear; that as I never espoused quarrels in which I had no concern, I had no reason for entering into any with these Caffres, by whom I was surrounded, and to whom I would readily render those services which friendly and inoffensive people had a right to expect from the compassionate and just part of mankind; that I would be answerable for their good behaviour, and take them under my protection as long as they remained with me; but that equity, which prompted me to defend them, would also determine me to turn my arms  
against

against them, should I observe them make the least attempt to disturb the repose of the planters. I concluded by observing, that I was sufficiently acquainted with the conduct of both, to be convinced that these savages, who breathed nothing but peace and tranquillity, would never be the first to give the signal for committing hostilities.

After this discourse, which was rather sharp, I ordered these four bastard Hottentots instantly to quit my camp, and made four of my fusileers accompany them until they should be out of my sight. I warned them that if ever they should think proper to return, whatever might be their pretext, I would pursue them as I would do wild beasts; and every other person who might appear with the like intentions, as those which had brought them. This last threat seemed to make a considerable impression on my Hottentots; who, on hearing the noise, had assembled around my tent. When it came to their turn to be interrogated respecting the secret abode of these spies, whom they had harboured in so criminal a manner in my camp, not one of them ventured to utter a single word in his own defence. I therefore gave  
vent

vent to very cutting and severe reproaches, and threatened to put the first of them to death who should dare to direct his steps towards that quarter in which the planters lived, with whom I wished them to have no communication whatever. As for Slinger, I treated him in a very harsh manner, and positively forbade him ever to quit his post without my leave.

The Caffres, who were present at this scene, having remarked that I had more than once alluded to them by my gestures, they seemed to be alarmed at the marks of anger which were displayed in my looks, and by the consternation that prevailed among my Hottentots. They readily perceived how much I was incensed against them for what had passed in my camp; but as they understood less of our language than I understood of theirs, they were as much surpris'd as uneasy at all this noise. By their eyes, which they turned first to one side and then to another, and fixed sometimes on our countenances, they expressed the perplexity and suspense with which their minds were agitated. Hans, however, took care to explain this enigma, and I thought that they then be-  
came

came much more composed; but when he informed them that the planters had taken shelter so near us, they were plunged into the utmost distress. They imagined that, being informed by the four spies, whom I had dismissed, of their abode with me, these treacherous and vindictive white men would immediately hasten to attack them, and to destroy them even in my camp. In vain did I endeavour to allay their fears, by assuring them that they were perfectly safe, and that I would support and protect them. I no longer beheld in them that open and sincere joy which proceeds from tranquillity of mind. They conferred much more than usual with one another and appeared as if they were concerting measures together, and wished only to depart, in order that they might fly from the danger that threatened them. Hans, who had accompanied them that evening when they retired to their kraal, confessed to me next morning, that they suspected him to be a traitor who had enticed them to me to be butchered, and that, consequently, I myself was not free from suspicion; that they remembered one of these four bastard whites to have often visited their country, under



der the pretence of exchanging cattle; that, believing him to be a sincere friend, they had reposed the greatest confidence in him, and never saw him arrive among them without testifying their joy at his presence; but that this monster soon betrayed them in the basest manner, and that he durst not afterwards appear amongst them, from a dread of finding, in sudden death, a just punishment for his villainy.

Hans informed me besides, that they had formed a resolution to return; and that they begged him to prevail upon me to give them some old iron, in exchange for a few oxen which they had brought along with them. I, however, flatly refused to grant them this article, giving them to understand that it was impossible for me to comply with their request, as I was unwilling to be accused of having supplied them with arms against the planters; that, without any interested views and merely from a desire of obliging them, I should, under any other circumstances, have been extremely happy to give them this mark of friendship; but that they must be sensible, as affairs then stood, that I was not at liberty to behave towards them so honourably

nourably as I wished ; that, except iron, every thing I possessed was at their service ; that I would give them a proof of this before their departure : and, to soften the harshness of my refusal, I added, that being desirous of continuing in friendship with the whole world, and of observing, both towards them and the planters, that strict neutrality which I had always professed, I was ready, upon every occasion, to give the same answer to their enemies, should they, when in want of arms or ammunition, come to implore my assistance in order to continue the war.

Though this answer and the subsequent explanation were clear and precise, these savages, who are never discouraged by the first refusal, returned to the charge, and renewed their importunities more than once ; but my resolution was formed, and upon this head I was inexorable. I was too well acquainted with the exaggerating disposition of the planters, who would not have failed to accuse me of perfidy for the least article extorted from me by their importunity, and for shewing weakness or condescension in such a delicate conjuncture. I do not doubt that they would have even gladly embraced

this opportunity of being revenged for the contempt with which I had more than once treated them; and they would then have no longer wanted a pretence for rendering me criminal. However powerful this prudent policy might be, which induced me to behave in this manner towards them, I had still a motive of much greater weight. Being too much above the attacks of these banditti, and their atrocious conspiracies, by refusing arms to these savages against the planters, and to the latter resources against the savages, I prevented them from continuing their horrid ravages. In case either of the parties should be exhausted, as had more than once happened, I could not supply them without taking a part in their quarrels; and this conduct would have very ill agreed with the integrity and sentiments of my heart. I even scrupled to accept a few cattle, offered me by the Caffres in exchange for a quantity of beads and toys, which I distributed among them when they departed.

I greatly wished that the young Caffre would remain with me; but I had no better success in endeavouring to intice him, than  
his

his companions had in attempting to prevail on me to give them old iron. Neither my presents, nor the promises I made of leaving him at liberty to depart in case he should not find his situation agreeable with me, had any effect upon him. He withstood my solicitations with so much firmness, that I lost all hopes of having any influence over him: "I know the whites too well," said he to me; "they have done us much hurt, and still continue their injuries: were I simple enough to follow you, in vain should I require you to fulfil your promises: I should never be permitted to see my country again." From the very just prejudices entertained by his nation, who in the time of peace had sometimes frequented Bruyntjës-Hoogte, he was afraid of being treated in the same manner as the planters who inhabit that part of the country treat their slaves; and had he, from an attachment towards me, yielded with a good grace, and consented to follow me, he was not assured, he said, that I should always have it in my power to protect him, and to send him back safe. I did every thing I could to destroy this prejudice, telling him that he ought not to confound all

the Dutch nation with those sanguinary and perfidious planters; that he ought also to enquire whether the people I had in my service were unhappy, or had any cause to complain; and that all of them were their own masters, and might quit me whenever they chose. Notwithstanding all these arguments, this young man continued in his resolution with astonishing firmness and obstinacy; so that, finding them in vain, I put an end to my solicitations.

Our frequent hunting excursions, and the petty altercations that arose in my camp, had considerably interrupted my easy and familiar conversation with the Caffres; but they did not make me entirely forget to procure information. I returned to this subject from time to time, and they gratified my curiosity with that cordiality with which a grateful sense of my kindness had inspired them. The news of their intended departure made me still more eager to ask them questions: above all, I had not yet forgotten the unhappy people who had been shipwrecked; but they could not make me acquainted with all those particulars which I was desirous of learning. They knew only that such a misfortune had  
happened;

happened; but as they were established to the north-west, and still more distant from the sea, they could tell me nothing certain respecting that unhappy catastrophe. They had indeed seen the greater part of the effects carried away from the wreck of the vessel; for several hordes had bartered them for cattle, and even those who were in my camp had some of these things in their possession. One of them shewed me a piece of silver coin, which was suspended from his neck; another wore a small steel key; and they described, in the best manner they could, a trinket which they had divided into pieces. I readily guessed that it must have been a watch, the wheels and other works of which they had converted into ornaments. I was fully convinced that my conjecture was right, when having produced mine they all cried out that it was the same thing, except in colour, which they said resembled the piece of money suspended from the neck of their companion. They added, that the most beautiful articles procured from the ship had fallen into the hands of a numerous body of Caffres who lived near the sea; that, above all, they had in their possession a great deal

of money; but that with respect to the people who had escaped from the waves, they had heard that some of them were found dead on the beach, and that the rest, more fortunate, had been able to reach a country inhabited by white people like me.

My conversation with these Caffres always concluded with repeated solicitations to accompany them to their country; but such a step, even had it been agreeable to me, would have been very inconsistent with prudence: for though I might be convinced that they were incapable of deceiving me, of attempting my life, or of robbing me of my effects; yet it was proper that they should be ignorant of the quarrels I had with my people; and that, as the rest refused obedience, it was impossible to carry more along with me than eight. On the contrary, I was extremely happy to think that on their return they would inform their countrymen that we were strong and numerous, and that we had nothing to fear from them. Had a division taken place, they might have suspected some bad design; and there would have been nothing to prevent them, whilst amusing me among their horde, from sending out a detachment

tachment to plunder my camp, and massacre those whom I had left to defend it. When I reflected on the numberless barbarities committed by the whites, I determined to be on my guard against these savages, from whom I should have had nothing to fear under any other circumstances; and on this account also I laid it down as an established rule, which I observed with the utmost rigour, never to permit any stranger to enter my camp in the night-time. Old Swanepoel took care that this regulation should be strictly followed: we always slept separately, immured in our enclosures, and no one was even suffered to go out during the night, as the savages always chose that time to attack the whites, who were easily perceived, and could be seen at a distance, on account of their clothes. As my absence would have been publicly known among these Caffres, I should have been very uneasy for the fate of those whom I left at my camp; but as I concealed from them the precise time of my departure, I thought they would conclude, that when I set out I would leave nothing behind me; for I had told them that I intended to send back my carriages to the colonies.



On the 21st of November they all came to inform me that they were ready to depart. Upon this occasion they renewed their protestations of gratitude and friendship, promising that, wherever they passed, their care would be to tell what they had seen; how much they were obliged to me; and in how affectionate and familiar a manner I had treated them during their long residence in my camp: adding, that the riches with which I had loaded them would awaken the envy of more than one; and that all the hordes would wait for me with the greatest impatience, and see me arrive among them with pleasure. The description which they promised to give of my camp, my person, and above all of my beard, would, they said, serve those who did not know me as a mark by which to distinguish me, and make me be received in a very different manner from that in which they would receive a planter. They then all turned, as if by agreement, towards my tent, over which a flag was waving, and asked me if I would not bring it with me, in order that they might be able to observe me at a distance. On my answering in the affirmative, they immediately shouted for joy;

joy; as if, not contented with the hopes I had given them that I would pay them a visit, they entertained no apprehension that I would be confounded with their detestable persecutors; and as if they had wished, from a sincere love towards me, to protect my person from every kind of insult. After the usual *tabès*, I accompanied them as far as the river, which both they and their cattle crossed by swimming; and when they reached the opposite bank, I saluted them, for the last time, with a general discharge of all my musquetry. They then proceeded on their march, and entering the valleys, and thickets, soon vanished from my sight.

I drew the figures of two of these people, who, with equal condescension and astonishment, suffered me to perform this operation. They are here given in the fifth and six plates. When these Caffres had departed, I flattered myself that my people would make some reflections on the peaceable manner in which they had lived among them; that they would be sensible how ill-founded their fear was; and that they would at last consent to accompany me. In order however that I might not appear to be anxious on this account,

count, or for carrying my project into execution, and that I might suffer them to pursue their own inclinations, I resolved to set out immediately, for the purpose of paying a visit to the venerable Haabas, intending on my return, if I found any change in their sentiments, to move my camp and begin my journey, that they might not have leisure to repent. During the time that the Caffres remained with me, I had seen only two Gonaquas, and I was desirous of renewing my acquaintance with these worthy neighbours, and of knowing what had passed amongst them since our separation. Having repaired to their kraal alone, they testified every mark of joy as soon as they recollected me; they all crowded around me, and they called to each other, and flocked together from all quarters, so that I was soon surrounded. Haabas informed me what fears both he and his horde had entertained whilst the Caffres resided in my camp; and he asked me an hundred times whether they were acquainted with the place of his retreat. I did every thing in my power to calm his uneasiness: I told him that the Caffres entertained no hatred against the Gonaqua Hottentots,

tentots, who, they were convinced, had no communication with the whites or the other Hottentots, and who, on the contrary, lived in a separate horde; that, besides this, the precise situation of their kraals was unknown to them; but that, in any event, it was the surest and best method of securing the common safety for them to remove and establish themselves somewhere else. Haabas agreed to this proposal with the greater readiness, as he placed little confidence in the fine speeches of the Caffres, since not long before they had obliged him to enter into hostilities with them: on this account, he said, it was the most prudent plan to take every precaution, and to avoid such a misfortune. Haabas had so good an opinion of me, that he asked my advice respecting the new establishment which he was about to form; and it was agreed that as soon as possible he should make for the mountains in the west, and remove altogether from the country of Caffraria, which extends to the north-east.

The banks of the Sondag were formerly the boundaries of the Caffres, who had their principal habitations on the Bruyntjes-Hoogte, some faint vestiges of which still remain.

main. The exprefs orders, as well as the intention of government, were, that these limits fhould always be accounted facred; but the planters, who have neither the fame views nor the fame wisdom as a political adminiftration, finding the lands of their defencelefs neighbours much better than their own, in procefs of time took poffeffion of them, and with impunity drove these people beyond the Groot-Vis. The orders of the governors, more and more difregarded, produced no effect, and the great diftance favoured these abufes, and made them become every day more frequent.

Whilst I continued with Haabas I kept myself quite private, and feveral motives prompted me not to remain here long. Being defirous of knowing whether he could not engage fome of his people to unite with thofe three who had voluntarily offered to accompany me when I paid my firft vifit to the Gonaquas, I defired him to put the queftion to them; and I found that there was only one who hefitated, and who at length gave a flat refusal; but as I was unwilling to ufe compulfion, or to afford any caufe of complaint to these worthy people, I defired  
the

the three, who had readily agreed to my proposal, to meet me at my camp in the course of four days. By this arrangement they had more than sufficient time to put their affairs in order, and to prepare their arms.

It was impossible to carry my carriages along with me, as I could depend at most upon no more than eight people to accompany me in my journey to Caffraria. It was necessary that I should have some oxen to carry my baggage, and I had not one accustomed to this service; we therefore agreed to make an exchange, and I promised to fulfil the terms of it as soon as I returned. All this was the business of a moment. Notwithstanding the pressing entreaties of the chief, and of the whole horde, I resolved to quit them immediately; and I pretended that I had a thousand things to settle amongst my own people. I did not however behold this retreat with the same pleasure as before; I found myself crossed in every possible manner, and new obstacles seemed to arise at every step: besides this, I found myself exhausted with fatigue. Before I took leave of Haabas, I did not forget to enquire concerning my unfortunate patient; but I had no inclination

inclination to see him again. He assured me, that all the means employed till that time had been attended with no other effect than that of preserving cleanliness around his person; but that his sufferings were neither lessened, nor were there any hopes of his life. I enquired also concerning the beautiful Narina, and was informed that both she and her mother were then absent. Suspecting that some of the horde had gone in quest of her, I was the more anxious on this account to depart; and having saluted Haabas, I returned to my camp.

When I got back to my tent, I called my people before me, one after the other, being desirous of learning from their own mouths what were their intentions, in order to discover whether there were not some mutinous fellows amongst them, who endeavoured to inspire them with a spirit of sedition and revolt. Their answers all tended to the same purpose, and they grounded their resistance only upon the terror into which my rashness had thrown them; but, however incensed I was at this disobedience, and however disagreeable the consequences were likely to be, I had not resolution enough to reprimand them.

them. Too many motives pleaded for them in my heart; and I was sensible that my attachment to them was still too strong, being convinced that nothing else but fear had seduced them, and that this alone had deranged their heads, especially as they told me that they were unwilling to enter a country from which they never saw either white men or Hottentots return. I exhorted them at least to continue faithful to me, and not to forget my kindness whilst I was absent, and how much they were indebted to their master. By their gestures and looks I could easily see what impression these last words made upon them, and how far I might have depended on their affection had I not attempted to force them to undertake this fatal journey. I promised to shew them the same attention in future, and I shut myself up in my tent. During part of the night I employed myself in forming my plan, and devising means for executing it with as much caution and expedition as I possibly could. Next morning, very early, I called those Hottentots upon whom I could depend, and I again told them that I was ready to depart with them, if they were still resolved to accompany me; and, to dispel



dispel from their minds every doubt, and to prove that I did not act rashly, I declared that I had no intention of penetrating far into Caffraria, unless I met with no obstacles, and experienced no kind of discontent on their part; that as, from the accounts of my envoys, I could not hope to find king Faroo easily, I proposed only to pay a visit to the Caffres, who waited for me with impatience, and then to turn off towards the east, in order to get near the coast, where we might perhaps discover the vessel that had been shipwrecked. Finding that they all adhered to the promise which they had made me, I addressed Swanepoel; and telling him that I considered him as another self, and invested him with the whole of my authority during my absence, I conjured him to watch over my camp, and preserve good order in it, as I could not depend on the rest.

My three Gonaquas having arrived on the day appointed, nothing remained but to prepare ourselves, and to lay in provisions necessary for our journey. I filled two leather bags with gunpowder, which I enclosed in a third, to preserve them from moisture; and we cast balls of different sizes, made a considerable

considerable quantity of small shot, and I carried eight fuses along with me, leaving eight more for the defence of my camp. I then collected different kinds of beads and toys, which I assorted separately into bags and small boxes, and packed up a woollen coverlet, a large cloak, and some other effects, which I considered as absolutely necessary. For the use of my kitchen, we carried only one kettle, a boiler, and some tea, salt, sugar, &c. My companions also employed themselves in rolling up their skins, mats, and utensils; and they did not forget to request that I would lay in a proper provision of tobacco and brandy. The bustle and agitation, with the running backwards and forwards, which all these preparations occasioned, would have afforded me a very amusing scene, had my mind been calm, and all my people disposed to follow me:—it might have been an excellent subject for a painter. On the other hand, the astonished and sorrowful air of those poltroons who remained exhibited a singular contrast: those who were about to depart exalted their voices, and beheld them with a kind of pity; one might have said, that they no longer knew them,

and that they were not of the same species. The former sufficiently manifested the uneasiness they felt at our departure, and their dejection on seeing me no more at their head: they ardently wished to know how long I should be absent; but this depended as little upon me as on them.

When our baggage was packed up, and nothing more remained to be done, we resolved to depart the next day, being the third of November.

When our evening fires were kindled, I placed myself by them as usual, with all my people, in order to drink tea; and I embraced this opportunity to give a gentle admonition to those who were to remain in my camp. I shewed them no sign of discontent; I even pretended to approve of their reasons; being well assured that I should not alter the determination of those who intended to depart with me: but with respect to the concern which they testified for my person, I told them, that I had too great confidence in my brave friends who were to accompany me, not to be perfectly easy. I recommended it to them to be strictly obedient to the orders of old Swanepoel, and I promised to  
reward

reward all those who should behave agreeably to the good opinion which they had hitherto given me cause to entertain of them. In short, that I might leave no regret in their minds, and that I might efface even the remembrance of our reciprocal disagreement, I ordered a general bumper to be handed round. They then drank to the success of our journey, and each retired to his place of rest.

Not being able to sleep during the night, I roused my people at break of day; after which we got ready our baggage, and loaded my four oxen.

Whilst we were breakfasting, I ordered all my dogs to be tied up: for without this precaution, the whole pack, which foresaw the time of our departure, and which on this account shewed every demonstration of joy, as was the case every time we changed our encampment, would not have failed to get before us, and to disperse themselves throughout the fields. I carried only five of them along with me.

Before we took leave of each other, I called Swanepoel aside, and told him, that if I found it either unsafe or impossible to tra-

verse all Caffraria, I would return without fail in fifteen days; but that, if I did not appear after six weeks were elapsed, he might decamp and repair to Camdebo, which was his own country; that I left him at liberty to pursue this route even before that period, if he apprehended that there would be the least risk in remaining where he was, and that I could easily find means to join him. I begged him to have a watchful eye over my people, my carriages, and my collections; and, in a word, on the first appearance of danger, to think of putting every thing in a place of shelter. If, on not seeing me return, (added I, with an emotion which I could not at that moment conceal), you have reason to despair of my safety, you must make directly for the Cape with all my people, and deliver my effects to my friend Mr. Boers.

This worthy old man, on hearing these last words, could not help shedding tears. Whilst he was almost suffocated by sighs and sobbing, I endeavoured to console him, by promising that I would attempt nothing but what was consistent with prudence. But it would have been in vain for him to attempt  
to

to detain me any longer: I tore myself away from his affectionate careffes, and joined my horfes, my oxen, and my dogs.

Kees had already got the ftart of me. Ef-corted by my eight people, one of whom carried my tent, I purfued my way, and foon loft fight of my camp. To crofs the river, I was obliged to go up its banks for the fpace of a league and a half; and when I had reached the other fide, a part of my people, who accompanied me thus far, took leave of me, and returned.

Having quitted the river, we directed our courfe towards the north-eaft, which, according to my fyftem, agreed very well with the direftions I had received from Hans, where to enter Caffraria in the broadeft part. We always travelled under the fame kind of trees which were interperfed throughout every part of this canton, and the ground was covered with very long grafs, that incommoded us much; but my people fuffered more than I, becaufe, as it was entirely dry, it pricked their feet at every ftap: they however remedied this inconvenience in part, by forming bufkins of thongs and grafs twifted together. My oxen alone ap-

peared to be very well satisfied with this circumstance; for, whilst they were marching forward, they fed whenever they chose, without having the trouble of bending down their heads to the earth. We had always in our view antelopes of different kinds, particularly that called the *spring-bock*. My dogs sprung a bustard, which I killed; it will form a new species, never before described, larger than the French field-duck of Europe: the plumage of its neck before, and that of the breast and belly, is of an uniform blueish grey colour; all the upper part of the body has a reddish tint, spotted and striped with a colour almost black; and its voice has a great resemblance to that of the toad, but it is stronger.

We continued our journey in this manner for five hours, under an excessive heat, which obliged us to halt. We were, it is true, almost continually sheltered by the trees, which grew very closely together; but the leaves of the mimosa are so small, and so thinly scattered, that its shade, which never darkens the place where it falls, may almost be accounted as nothing. We found no other in the whole plain; and I observed that the  
beautiful

beautiful trees, like those of Auteniqua, grew upon the tops of high mountains, which we must have gone much farther in search of.

Perceiving in the course of our march that my ape often stopped at the mimosa, detached some of the prickles with which that tree is furnished, and eat them with pleasure, I was desirous of partaking with him, especially as I confided much in his taste. The greenest of these prickles, and those only which could be eaten, were from two to three inches in length, and as brittle as asparagus. When I tasted them, I found myself very much deceived; for though I at first thought them sweet and agreeable, a moment after a most insupportable taste of garlic, which burnt my mouth, and which the most robust inhabitant of Marseilles could not have endured, made me spit them out again. The seeds of this tree, which Kees seemed to prefer, produced the same effect on my palate. This smell was so strong, that at a distance I could discover, by its urine, when an ape had eaten of the mimosa.

On this tree I found a very large and most elegant species of caterpillar; its body was surrounded with bands of a velvet black on



a beautiful green ground. When it becomes a butterfly, its wings are almost entirely white, with a few brown stripes and spots; its body is so soft that it feels to the touch like cotton. I had several opportunities afterwards of remarking, that when the mimosa is in bloom, which generally happens towards the commencement of January, its flowers are covered with a great number of insects of different kinds; in the cantons, therefore, where this tree grows, one may find in the greatest abundance a part of those different individuals which compose this class of natural history; and, by a necessary consequence, an infinite number of different birds are attracted by these insects, which form the principal part of their nourishment.

I took advantage of this first halting to skin the bustard which I had killed; its flesh afforded me a meal, and my people dined on the provisions which we had brought with us. My oxen had fared so well during the way, that we had scarcely stopped. When they lay down, notwithstanding the loads which they carried, the grass around them was so high that they were entirely hid by it. In the afternoon the sky became overcast,

overcast, and we were attacked by a most dreadful storm, accompanied with thunder: but we still continued our journey; for being unwilling to unload the oxen before night, and having no shelter in the place where we dined, we should have been equally exposed to the rain when at rest as when in motion. About five in the evening, however, finding ourselves so much harassed that we could proceed no farther, I ordered my tent to be immediately erected. Large fires were kindled; and when we had dried ourselves I retired to rest, whilst my people stretched themselves out as well as they could under their skins and mats, inclined towards the rain in the same manner as screens are placed to defend houses from the heat of the sun. The moisture of the earth soon penetrated the blanket upon which I had thrown myself, but in vain, to enjoy repose; and the rain which poured down incessantly, penetrated through the canvass of my tent on all sides, so that I was as completely drenched as my people.

Having prepared to depart at break of day, Hans informed me that we could not be far distant from that kraal of the Caffres which  
had

had been destroyed by the planters. As the rising of the sun had dispersed the clouds, I resumed my courage, and resolved to proceed till I found this kraal, which seemed to promise us a commodious shelter; but as we had already marched seven hours, and had three leagues more to travel before we could reach it; and as my oxen were oppressed by fatigue, and as night was approaching, I resolved to erect my tent, especially as I found myself in the neighbourhood of a most delightful rivulet. Every league we travelled the mimosas became still scarcer, smaller, and more stunted, than in the places through which we had passed: the grass also was not so high. We indeed found that we were now upon a very elevated spot. From the place where I was encamped my people shewed me a very high mountain, which they thought they knew, and which I could distinguish better by the help of my spying-glass. It was the nearest to the encampment of Koks-Kraal, and I had more than once traversed it in my hunting excursions: it was about ten or twelve leagues distant from us.

When they had unloaded the oxen and erected my tent, I made an excursion on foot

along the banks of the rivulet, which probably, after many windings, joined the river Groot-Vis; and I had the good fortune to kill a bird of the cuckoo kind, which to me was new and uncommon. Notwithstanding its affinity to that of which I have already spoken, and which Buffon describes under the name of the *green and golden cuckoo* of the Cape, I have strong reasons for making it another species: its note, besides, is entirely different. The female, more cunning than the male, made me lose a great deal of time in pursuing her, while by her tricks, which I might compare to those of a coquette, she every moment seemed to become less shy, in order to deceive my hopes the more. When I thought I had hold of her, she instantly flew to the distance of ten paces, to renew her provoking sport: at length, after amusing me in this manner for an hour, she retired to the thickest part of the wood, and I was obliged to return after having spent my labour in vain.

Just as I reached my camp, one of my hunters had arrived there with a gnou\* which he had killed. Colonel Gordon was

\* A species of antelope.

the first person who gave an account of this beautiful and rare animal; and the description of it which he sent to professor Alleman, and which that learned man published, is very accurate; but it is to be regretted that the figure which accompanies it is defective and badly delineated. This animal, which in shape resembles a small ox, is no better represented in the French translation of Dr. Sparmann's Voyage, because the engraver, or the person who made the drawings, not contented with giving it the chest and buttocks of a horse, has added also his tail, which is false, as the gnou has a tail exactly like that of an ox. The Hottentots name this antelope *nou*, preceded by that second kind of clapping which I have already mentioned. It was probably this clapping which induced Colonel Gordon to add a *g* to the proper name, which renders the pronounciation of it almost the same. Dr. Sparmann writes the word *gnu*, because the *u* in the Swedish and German languages is pronounced *ou*. Translators ought to attend to these small variations, which may occasion errors respecting the proper names of animals, which ought not to be disfigured.

We spent this night very peaceably, having our oxen fastened near us with large leather thongs, and our horse with reins. We indeed heard some lions roaring at a distance in the mountains; but we were under very little apprehensions on that account. In general our uneasiness and embarrassment in this respect had always decreased in proportion to the train which followed us.

Having departed early on the 5th of the month, we arrived at the kraal of the Caffres, which we imagined we had met with the evening before. The greater part of the huts were still entire, and only a few of them had been burnt. I observed six or seven standing close together in a cluster; the rest, which might amount to about fifty or sixty, were scattered here and there in the extent of half a league. Here I discovered, for the first time, that these people apply themselves a little to agriculture: they sow a kind of millet, known under the name of Caffre wheat; and, in order that they may be enabled to till the ground with greater facility, each chooses that spot which seems to be most favourable for his views, and erects his hut in the centre of it: on this account their

kraals

kraals are not in one and the same place, like those of the Gonaquas or Hottentots. It is probable that those among whose huts we were had been surpris'd by the planters; for we found every where around us carcasses and scattered limbs, half devoured by ferocious animals. Several fields of corn were ready for the hand of the reaper; but the antelopes, which appear in great numbers when they are not driven away by scare-crows, had damaged them considerably: my oxen, which were here let loose, completed the devastation.

As for me, I established myself in my tent, and my Hottentots in the seven huts of which they took possession. As the situation of this place appeared to me very agreeable, I resolv'd to spend several days in it; and in consequence of this determination, we cut down a number of large branches, with which my tent was so well concealed, that it would have been very difficult to discover it. A rivulet of limpid water rolled over its pebbly bed close to us; a few mimosas here and there interspersed preserv'd a little coolness; and at the distance of an hundred paces from our camp we could, if necessary, enjoy  
a most

a most delightful shelter, in an immense forest composed of large and magnificent trees. I often went thither to walk, especially during the great heats of the day; and it clearly appeared, from the various paths which crossed each other in a thousand different directions, that this place must have been long frequented.

I observed here many trees of the same kind as those I had met with in the country of Auteniqua: the *stink-boutt*, or stinking wood, abounded in every quarter. This tree is found also, as I have already remarked, near the bay of Agoa, from which it is transported by the inhabitants of the Cape, in order to be manufactured and employed in cabinet work; but the expence occasioned by the distance of that bay renders it exceedingly scarce and dear. Besides being susceptible of the finest polish, it has the valuable property of being proof against the attacks of worms; and when it grows old, it acquires a chestnut colour, the veins of which being very broad are shaded with tints more or less dark. When it is cut, and before it becomes dry, it exhales an excrementitious smell, which occasions a nausea, particularly



particularly in wet weather, and when it is impregnated with water; but in proportion as it dries, it loses this noxious quality. Like all hard and compact timber, it grows slowly; but in process of time it increases in height and bulk, so as to surpass the tallest oaks.

I observed also the *geele-boutt*, or yellow wood, which takes its name from its colour. It is not so highly valued as the other for making different articles of furniture; but as it is well shaped and fells readily, it is converted into beautiful boards, planks, and beams for building. It produces a yellow fruit of the size of a plum, which is very thickly covered with small tubercles: the kernel, which is extremely hard, is the only part of it that can be eaten.

Another tree, the *roye-boutt*, or red wood, takes its name also from the deep red colour of its bark. It is thick, but very tender, and a dye may be extracted from it. The fruit, which is of the size of an olive, is likewise red when ripe: it is eat with pleasure, and the inhabitants make a kind of spirituous liquor from it.

I stopped before a *kaerssen boom*, or cherry-tree, which to me seemed to have no other merit

merit than that of recalling to my view the place where I killed my four elephants, and the time when that event happened. I remembered that they readily eat the fruit and the leaves of this tree; and, as I had never tasted them, I embraced this opportunity of their being within my reach; but I was convinced that one must be an elephant to be able to endure them.

My Hottentots made me remark a tree which I had never before seen, and which they told me had been formerly very common in the colonies. It was employed in preference to any other for making carts and waggons; but only by the company, who had expressly forbid it to be used except for their service. This exclusion was the cause of its destruction, and it is now only seen in places remote from the colonies. On the other hand, the indolence of the planters suffered it to decay entirely, so that at present it is considered as a lost species. This tree, at the Cape, is named *boeken hout*.

Caffraria often produces, in the neighbourhood of small rivers and in marshy places, a kind of trees which have a great resemblance to our willows. I have also often met with

the wild almond tree, *wilde-amandel*, the narrow leaves and fruit of which, shaped exactly like ours, differed only in the reddish brown colour of the husk.

If some skilful botanist would traverse this beautiful country which I am now describing, he would certainly find objects highly worthy of his attention, and which might prove of great advantage to science. As for my part, I directed my researches to those things only which I had never before seen, or which appeared extraordinary. Being incapable of distinguishing the real properties of trees, plants, and shrubs, I admired nothing but their striking differences; such, for example, as the moss or yellow lichen that adhered to them; all its shoots being often ten or twelve feet in length: my people, in their language, called it hair: and in several cantons the trees were so covered with it, that one could neither distinguish the trunk nor the branches nor even a single leaf; which appeared to me very singular.

This moss was of the utmost service to me in preserving my birds; and I strongly advise such ornithologists as may be induced to visit this very curious part of Africa, not

to encumber themselves with tow, cotton or any other substances of the like nature. In order that I might procure a quantity of it sufficient for my whole journey, as I was afraid of not finding it elsewhere, I ordered one of these trees to be cut down and to be stripped of all its hair. The youngest and shortest is the most delicate; that which is six feet long is harder, and can be of no use but for quadrupedes and very large birds.

I found creeping plants also in almost every place where I passed, which having reached the summits, and even the smallest branches of the trees, shot forth filaments that hung down to the earth. Being at first exceedingly weak and slender, they at length attain to the size of one's arm, like those seen in America. These filaments, which are almost innumerable, bear no leaves, and the natives call them *bavians tow*, or *bavians ropes*, because, by their assistance, these apes climb to the tops of the trees in order to reach the fruit of the plants, which grows only at their extremities where the filaments begin to shoot forth. This fruit, which birds, and particularly the touracos, are exceedingly fond of, contains in its pulp a few round

R 2

and

and flat seeds: it is of the size of a cherry, and has a crimson colour. I speak here of the fruit of a particular species of these plants, which is called the wild grape, on account of the great resemblance which its leaves have to those of the vine. These natural ropes will sustain the weight of a man, if the branch from which they are suspended be sufficiently strong: this cherry is excellent, and very proper for making a kind of spirituous liquor; when preserved, it is still better. I have often imitated the *bavians*, and mounted, by the help of these cords, to the summits of the trees, to gather the fruit, and sometimes to collect insects.

These woods abounded likewise with two species of antelopes, not at all wild: the *bos-boc*, which I had seen in other places, and that called by the Hottentots *noumetjes*. Of the latter I had only a slight view in the country of Autiniqua; it is not uncommon, but it is very difficult to approach so near it as to kill it. Besides this, it seldom appears in the plains, but keeps itself concealed in the bushes and thickest parts of the forests. At the utmost it is no more than twelve or fifteen inches in height; the horns of the  
male

male are straight, smooth, and distant about a hand breadth from each other. The colour of this little animal is a mouse grey, which, on the ridge of the back, assumes a reddish tint: but the belly and the inside of the thighs are white. It may be easily seen, by the elegance of its form, that it is exceedingly nimble; it sometimes takes surprising leaps, and squats down like a hare. If any one happens to get near it, as soon as it perceives him, it instantly betakes itself to flight with the velocity of lightning, and afterwards stops at some distance to examine its pursuer. This is the only opportunity one can have of firing at it; and the hunter must, without loss of time, embrace it, for it lasts only for a moment. Its cry, which I ought rather to call its warbling, is very long and shrill: it would be in vain for me to attempt to imitate it. It begins by a broken kind of whistling, the tones of which are like those of a tabour hung round with little bells; and its goat-like voice imitates them exceedingly well: one would hardly conceive that so small an animal could make so loud a noise; when I heard it for the first time I imagined that I was dreaming. Its flesh, more deli-

cate than that of any other antelope, was to us a most delicious treat. I shall give a description, with a figure of this animal, in my account of the quadrupedes of Africa.

Among other new birds of this canton, I shot a small eagle, which had a very long crest that hung down behind its head; and I named another bird the *king's hunter*\*, on account of the resemblance of its form to that of the king's fisher. Its bill, which is long, is of a red colour; the back, the wings, and the tail, are of a lively blue: it feeds upon insects, inhabits only the woods, and makes its nest in hollow trees. I shall not forget this beautiful bird in my ornithology.

Nothing remarkable occurred to us in this encampment, except that, during the whole time of our residence here, we regularly experienced every evening, between three and four o'clock, severe storms, which did not much incommode us, because they were of short continuance. On the 9th of the month we packed up our baggage and again set out, when my Hottentots, according to their custom of giving names to places from some circumstance that has happened in them,

\* *Martin chasseur.*

called the kraal which we left the *Camp of Slaughter*. Having advanced straight towards the east, and traversed a canton all the grass of which had been a prey to the flames, a fresh verdure that began to shoot up formed a most beautiful green carpet under our feet. At every step we met whole flocks of spring-bocks, gnous, and ostriches. As we had more provisions than were necessary, we did not fire at these antelopes. I only discharged my fusée at a few ostriches; but being too suspicious to suffer any one to approach near them, I could not kill one of them. In proportion as we advanced, the antelopes collected themselves into a body to see us pass; and the heat was so intense, and perspiration so abundant, that a cloud of vapour arose from the middle of these innumerable flocks. In the course of our march I killed partridges sufficient to dine all my people, but we did not stop to regale on them till we had fatigued ourselves by continuing our journey for full five hours more. About which time a heavy rain came, one as usual that refreshed us much. Throughout all this canton I observed the traces of oxen, which indeed seemed to be very old; but I



was surpris'd that so fine a country should be entirely destitute of inhabitants, and that we did not meet with a single Caffre. Hans pretended that the alarm had been too general; and though we had already travelled thirty leagues, I began to despair of seeing even one kraal: every thing seem'd to announce that these people had retired farther towards the centre; and I conjectured that if we should discover any of the inhabitants, they could only be spies from the hordes, who, desirous of promoting the general good, ranged the country, and kept themselves concealed in ambush.

While I was conversing familiarly with my people, I perceived a small flock of antelopes, which, passing quite close to us, made off full speed, being pursued by a pack of seventeen wild dogs. I instantly mounted my horse, and set out on a full gallop to defend the antelopes and to attack the wild dogs; but I unluckily soon lost sight of them both. As the ground was covered with pebbles concealed under the grass, my horse stumbled at every step, and we both narrowly escaped having our necks broke. Returning therefore very deliberately in order to join

my people, an ostrich started up at the distance of twenty paces from me; and as I doubted whether it might not be a female which had been sitting, I hastened to the spot from which I saw it depart, where I found eleven eggs still warm, and four more scattered at a distance of two or three feet from the nest. Having called to my companions, who instantly flocked round me, I ordered them to break one of the warm eggs, in which we perceived a young one completely formed, and of the size of a chicken when ready to burst its shell. I imagined that all these eggs were spoiled; but my people thought otherwise. Each of them endeavoured to fall upon the nest; and Amiroo, taking up the other four, desired me to eat them, assuring me that I should find them excellent. I here learned from this savage a circumstance which my Hottentots themselves were ignorant of, and which is even unknown to naturalists, since no one whom I know speaks of it. This fact, which I have often afterwards had an opportunity of verifying, is, that the ostrich always deposits near her nest a certain number of eggs, proportioned to those which she destines for incubation.

As she never sits upon these eggs, they will keep fresh a long time, and the provident instinct of the mother sets them apart for the first nourishment of the young produced from the rest. Experience convinced me of the truth of this assertion; and every time I met with an ostrich's nest, I found several of the eggs separated in the same manner. When I describe these singular birds, I shall enlarge more on this interesting subject.

At half after seven in the evening I halted near a considerable pond formed by the rain-water, as my oxen had not tasted any when we stopped at noon, and as I was not certain of finding an opportunity of refreshing them if I advanced farther. When our fires were kindled, each cooked his eggs after his own manner; having taken off the skin from one of those which were reserved for me, my Hottentots put a little grease into it, after it had been half buried in hot ashes, and stirring it with a wooden spoon, they made of it what is called a broiled egg, which, if I remember right, might be equivalent to at least a dozen of hen's eggs; but, notwithstanding my voracious appetite, and the exquisite taste of this new food, I could only eat the half of  
it.

it. Several of my people, after taking out the young which they found in theirs, made an omelet of the rest. I questioned them, with some pleasantry, respecting their fine ragouts of these half-hatched eggs, and I could not help concluding that they must be infectious; on this account I was desirous of tasting them, and had I not been blinded by prejudice, I should have found no difference between them and mine, and should have eat them with as much pleasure.

We spent the evening very cheerfully; but this was not the case during the night, for we were all kept awake by the continual barking of our dogs, which was the more disagreeable, as our ears were assailed by no other noise. As this uproar was not occasioned by any wild beast, for it would soon or late have made its appearance, our suspicions fell upon the savages, and I began to be apprehensive of some treachery. Day at length appeared, but it did not bring back tranquillity, and all the search which we made in the neighbourhood proved entirely fruitless. We did not know whether the people whom we dreaded were Caffres, or some of those plunderers called the Boshtmen:

the dryness of the ground and the grass, in the spot where we were encamped, did not permit us to discover their traces; and on the 10th, without learning any thing farther, we departed, keeping still towards the east. This direction conducted us to a canton, in which the mimosas were in so great abundance, and so tall and bushy, that they formed a real forest. After passing through it we found a small river, which we were so fortunate as to be able to ford; and marching along its banks two full leagues, we encamped, as night was about to overtake us.

Having been informed by our guide, that three leagues farther we should at length find the kraal of those Caffres who had solicited me to pay them a visit, I was the more desirous of seeing it, as it was very curious and ancient; and as this place, extremely commodious and well known to the savages, seldom remained vacant, and as the horde was exceedingly numerous. That we might not discover ourselves, I ordered my people not to fire at any game whatever; and when my tent was erected, and our fires kindled, we remained around them till late at night. After this, in order to deceive the enemy, in whose

whose promises I prudently reposed very little confidence, I ordered some fresh branches to be thrown into these fires, to keep them burning till day-light, and we then went and laid ourselves down on mats at the distance of fifty paces farther. We were not disturbed in our sleep; and next morning Hans, with two of my Hottentots well armed, setting out before, I appointed them to meet us at a place two leagues distant from us, that is to say within a league of the kraal, and to come immediately and give us an account of what they had seen. In two hours they returned, and informed me, with equal grief and astonishment, that they had found the kraal in very good condition, but that, like the rest, it was absolutely deserted; upon which I continued my route to the spot, and took possession of this new empire. In this kraal, which was remarkably extensive, we found above an hundred huts apparently very ancient, and constructed with great solidity; they were distributed in the ordinary manner, and at the usual distances, and it appeared that the inhabitants had been alarmed without cause, for we observed no ruins, and not a single dead body. In one of the huts they  
had

had forgot two assagays; and in another a woman's small apron, a few wooden utensils for tilling the earth, and some other trifles of very little value: these different objects I took possession of. The small corn-fields did not here exhibit, as in the first kraal where we stopped, a picture of desolation and destruction; on the contrary, it appeared that the crops had been carried away in peace. We determined to stop here two or three days, in order to distribute a few scouts at a distance, and to see if we could not discover some Caffres in the neighbourhood. I well knew that by going directly northward I should fall in with the centre of Caffraria, which I above all things wished to avoid, as I thought it better to advance gradually towards it by long circuits, and not to expose myself, but in proportion as I should see the dangers lessened, and according to the information which I might acquire by the way. All our stratagems, and all our researches, ended however in nothing, for not a single Caffre appeared.

I will be candid enough to confess, that, from my own prejudice, and the pompous descriptions of the magnificence and luxury of the Asiatic despots, I imagined that I should  
find

find at least some appearance of them in the territories of the king of the Caffres. This idea had inspired me with a very strong desire of seeing Faroo; but I no longer found the same food for my curiosity, after the last guests whom I had received in my camp, and who generally resided near, had told me that this prince, without any particular train, inhabited, like the meanest of his subjects, a hut which was neither larger nor better ornamented than the rest; that, like them, he might become very poor, if a mortality prevailed among his cattle; that his subjects were obliged to pay him neither subsidies nor taxes; that he had no right to touch their property; that, in a word, he was only a plain chief as among the Hottentots; that the only remarkable difference between this chief and the rest was, that his place was hereditary; but that, destitute of every external decoration, and of every badge of royalty, he possessed only a very limited power.

From these details, many of those brilliant ideas which my imagination had formed respecting this king began to disappear; and as I could gain nothing by seeing him, and as I despaired



despaired of meeting with him, my whole views were directed towards the shipwrecked vessel. The relations of my Caffres gave me very little hopes of being able to satisfy myself on this point; yet I pursued my course towards the coast, always full of the chimerical notion that I should obtain more certain information respecting it.

In every part of our way we found nothing but deserted huts, without seeing a single inhabitant, or any traces of the human race. In order, however, to indemnify us for this loss, all the places through which we passed abounded with buffaloes, antelopes, and in general with game of every kind—which proves, better than vain reasoning, that the Caffres are not so much addicted to hunting as the Hottentots; that they trust less to hopes, and that they depend more on their corn and flocks than on the resources of their skill and dexterity in wielding their assagays and clubs. We saw several elephants, but they did not suffer us to get near enough to fire at them.

Since my departure from Koks-Kraal, I had formed so large a collection of birds, that I no longer knew where to put them; it was certainly more embarrassing by its size than  
its

its weight; though I had always taken care, after preserving each individual, to place it flat in order to spare room.

On the 15th we crossed the small river which we had followed this far, in order to avoid barren and too steep mountains which appeared before us; after this we were obliged to turn off towards the south, because, not finding any beaten track, we were forced to direct our course according to circumstances and the nature of the ground. In the course of our march I sprung a bustard a little before me; which I killed; it had been sitting on two eggs, which contained young ready to burst the shell, and covered with their first down. I was extremely happy that chance procured me this bird, which was entirely new to me; and it appeared that the male and the female sit on the eggs alternately. The one I killed, which was a male, had a very large and thick crest, like a capuchin, on the hinder part of its head. The female which soon came and hovered around the spot, seemed to watch us, and from time to time sent forth a very hoarse cry. I had flattered myself that I should be able to kill her also, and with this view I left the two eggs

in the nest: but as in the whole neighbourhood there was no place where I could conceal myself so as not to be seen, she did not approach; I therefore abandoned my design and pursued my journey.

It is probable that there was not a single Caffre in all that part of the country which we had hitherto traversed; for the reports of our fufees which we fired continually for some days, either in our marches or in our different encampments, must have discovered us, and conducted them towards us, as they are far from being timorous. During our journey we were not, however, all of the same opinion on this subject, which formed the usual grounds of our conversation; some pretending that there must be Caffres in the canton, but that, not being numerous, they did not venture to appear; and others maintaining that there were none, since we had not been attacked by them: but when we came to deliberate what conduct we ought to pursue when we should meet them, all my people lost themselves in absurdity, and formed the most ridiculous and impracticable plans for our defence. I alone was of opinion that it would be proper to sustain the  
first

first discharge of their weapons without returning it, and to endeavour, by gentle means, to come to an explanation before we used our arms, which would secure us the advantage, should we be compelled to have recourse to them. I entertained no doubt that this method would succeed should we be attacked in the day time; but if in the night, the case would have been different. In this prudent plan of accommodation I however saw difficulties almost insurmountable; and it was to avoid every kind of misfortune that we had always made it a rule to sleep at the distance of fifty paces from my tent, over which I took care to leave my flag floating, that it might be perceived at a great distance. This little stratagem secured us at least from the first surprize.

Notwithstanding our apprehensions, we did not give over our courses and hunting excursions. Water now grew more scarce, and I began to entertain very serious apprehensions. One day, when the weather was cloudy, which enabled us to make a very agreeable and gentle march for more than six hours, I perceived Kees stop all of a sudden, turn his face and nose towards the

S 2

wind,

wind, and begin to run with all my dogs after him, none of which made the least noise. Astonished at this new spectacle, and perceiving nothing that could particularly attract them, I made haste to come up with them; but what was my surprise when I found them all collected around a beautiful spring, at the distance of three hundred paces from the place whence they had set out! Upon this discovery, having made a sign to my people with my hand to approach, they instantly obeyed, and we encamped close to this beneficent spring, which immediately assumed the name of the magician that discovered it.

I shall more than once have occasion to recollect circumstances in which I received signal services from the animals I had along with me; and on this occasion they freed me from a dreadful affliction under which I must have sunk without their assistance. I never doubted that man received from his Creator the same faculties in an equal proportion, but his corruption has insensibly deprived him of them all. The savages approaching nearer to nature in proportion as they are removed from us, have likewise  
every

every sense more acute; and I myself (I hope my assertion will not be doubted,) after passing five or six months in the deserts, when, following their example, I turned my face from one side to the other, was at length able, like them, to discover either a river or a pond, and we never failed to find them.

Being resolved to pass the night at Kees-fountain, I embraced the opportunity of a few moments leisure to prepare the bustard I had killed; and as the distant clouds collected together seemed to threaten a storm, I ordered the oxen to be unloaded, and my tent to be erected.

Before night the rain came on in great abundance; but it did not continue long, and it scarcely ceased when I began to range all the neighbourhood in search of small birds. In a spot, not far from our encampment, I perceived two of those golden yellow serpents, so common and well known in the colonies under the name of *kooper-capel*, start up at my feet. These reptiles, as soon as they saw me, reared themselves erect, swelling up their heads prodigiously, and hissing in a most frightful manner. As I knew that the bite of these animals was mortal, and that

the faculty which they have of darting forwards renders them more dangerous, I discharged my piece, upon which one of them fell down dead, while the other entered his hole. Having seized the one which remained, I found that it was five feet three inches in length, and nine inches in circumference in the thickest part: besides an infinite number of very small teeth, hardly perceptible, with which its mouth was armed, it had on each side of the upper jaw, as high as the nostrils, a hook five lines long, playing upon its joint and which it could extend in the same manner as a cat or a tiger extends its claws. One of these my Hottentots broke; and, as I was very fond of hearing them discourse upon natural history, because, perhaps, I found more truth in the rude reasoning of habit and experience than in the ingenious speculations of our literati, I asked them several questions concerning my serpent, which they answered in a much more satisfactory manner than I expected. They did not fail to point out to me, among other singularities, that this hollow tooth was the conductor which conveyed the poison into the wound that it made. Such is, if I mistake not, the  
nature

nature of the *boicininga*, or rattle snake, which I have seen often in South America.

I observed on this occasion how much these animals are dreaded by apes. It was not possible for me to make Kees approach the serpent that I had got possession of, though it was entirely dead. In order to amuse myself, I found means however to fasten it to his tail; so that not being able to make any motion without moving the serpent also, it may easily be conceived what leaps and jumps poor Kees took, and what fury and impatience he shewed during the whole time that I kept his fatal enemy affixed to him.

When night came on, we observed a large fire, which we concluded, as far as the obscurity would permit us to judge, to be on the top of some mountain, at the distance of about three leagues from us. Notwithstanding this distance, concerning which we were not certain, my Hottentots thought they perceived the shadows of some men passing backwards and forwards before the fire, and my spying-glass soon convinced me that they were not mistaken; but we were ignorant whether they were Caffres, or those



detestable Boshmen, enemies to every nation without distinction, and plunderers by profession, from whom we could expect no kind of friendship. We however conjectured that they were some of the latter, because the Caffres never inhabit the mountains; we therefore took the precaution to extinguish our fires, and we spent the rest of the night very peaceably.

Our first care, when we awoke, was to endeavour to discover with more certainty where, and by whom, the fire we had seen the preceding evening had been kindled. The weather was exceedingly favourable for observing the smoke, but it appeared that the fire was extinguished, for we saw nothing more of it. Being thus deprived of a fixed point of direction, we set out to enter the hollow defiles, where we were likely to be in danger of losing ourselves. Nevertheless, as my Hottentots, persuaded that these people were not Caffres, appeared willing to pursue their route that way at the risk of every thing that might happen, and as our plan naturally conducted us thither, we packed up our baggage in great haste, and bid adieu to Kees-fountain.

We

We were obliged to pass through a kind of wood, in which the mimosas were so numerous, so thick, and so encumbered with bushes, that we could scarcely proceed ten steps without being obliged to stop in order to force our way, which impeded us much especially as our oxen continually turned from one side to the other to search for a passage. We however at length got clear of this tedious forest; but I am persuaded that, after so much fatigue, and so many turnings and windings, which continued for the space of three hours, we were not more than a league from Kees-fountain. Before us we had a thicket almost like that which we passed; and in order to avoid it, we made a turn round, pursuing our course in a direction more to the south-west.

Covered with sweat and dust, and oppressed by heat, after marching more than six hours, we stopped on the banks of a lake, which luckily happened to be in our way. One of my dogs, which had heated himself very much by running after game, was here in great danger of perishing; and I should have indeed lost him, had it not been for Jan, who, perceiving him in the water, instantly

stantly rushed forwards to drag him from it. I mention this circumstance, which to many readers may appear trifling, merely for the purpose of establishing a fact which I have been eye-witness of in Africa; as soon as an over-heated dog plunges into the water to cool himself, he expires, unless speedy assistance be given him. In a hunting excursion I had with Mr. Boers, a large greyhound, which had got about an hundred paces before his carriage, having thrown himself into a rivulet that lay in our way, was found dead when we came up to him.

Scarcely had we encamped and refreshed ourselves a little when I dispatched some Hottentots to make discoveries, especially in that quarter from which we had been principally disturbed during the night. In less than an hour I heard from this detachment; for one of my people came back in great haste to tell me, that he had perceived a body of Caffres in full march; and having conducted me and Hans by several windings, he at length brought us to a spot where we had an opportunity of judging for ourselves. We indeed saw ten men, who were quietly driving before them a few horned cattle;

cattle; and as we had nothing to fear from so small a number, we made our appearance at a certain distance. As soon as these people observed us, they betook themselves to flight, being frightened, above all, by our fire arms; but Hans calling out to them in their own language that they might advance boldly, they immediately stopped. Going forward, therefore, to speak to them, when they were convinced that I was a friend to the Caffres they all approached me; and having received them very politely, I stretched out my hand and saluted him with a *tabè*. The sight of my beard dispelled their terror; for they had heard mention made of me by those whom I received in my camp at Koks-Kraal, and one of them knew Hans, whom he had seen in his own country. I conducted them all together, with their cattle, to my encampment, and regaled them with tobacco and brandy. They pointed to my flag, to give me to understand that they were well informed respecting me; and they seemed to be much astonished not to see my carriages, and my whole troop. As I was unwilling to let them know how much they were dreaded by the Hottentots, I told them that I only wished

wished to make a little excursion into their country to procure intelligence, and afterwards to traverse it at my leisure.

They were extremely desirous of knowing where the planters then were; if they were still in pursuit of them, and what might be their intentions. On this subject I gave them such information as I thought consistent with prudence. I had seen the planters who had retired to Bruyntjes-Hoogte keep themselves there on the defensive, agitated by terrors as much as the Caffres themselves. The latter told me, that, to reach the nearest hordes of their nation, it would be still necessary to continue my journey for full five days more. Calculating therefore the distance which separated these people from the planters, and which I reckoned to be nearly sixty leagues, I could, without deceiving them, allay their fears, and convince them that the latter were neither disposed nor in a condition to undertake so long a journey. These poor people were in such a wretched situation that I could not help pitying them, for they had never been harrassed in such a manner as they were at that time; besides the losses which they had sustained in men and cattle by the attacks

tacks of the white people, they were daily exposed to others from the Tambouchis, a neighbouring nation, who, taking advantage of their critical situation, over-ran several of the cantons of Caffraria, and put every thing to the sword that they met with; so that, oppressed on both sides by this diversion, the Caffres, destitute of warlike stores and unable to defend themselves, retreated as fast as possible, and penetrated farther northwards, to avoid two enemies whom they could not oppose; while the Boshmen, a third no less formidable, plundered and massacred them wherever they could find them.

From the information given me by these people, I was astonished that they had straggled so far from their horde; and that they wandered as chance directed, without knowing whither to direct their course. They however told me, that on the first incursion made by the whites, they had suddenly driven their flocks, all in confusion, either towards the sea coast, or to other remote parts of Caffraria; but that hearing no accounts of any new hostilities, they had ventured to quit their hordes, and to go in quest of their dispersed cattle, in order to bring them back again.

again. They had indeed about thirty along with them; and when I mentioned the fire which we had observed in the night-time, they assured me that it was kindled by them; but that they had not seen mine, which would have alarmed them much. Having questioned them respecting the vessel which had been ship-wrecked, they only repeated what had been told me by others; which was that a ship had really been lost on the coasts of Caffraria. After this information, I concluded that this misfortune had happened beyond the country of the Tambouchis, opposite to Madagascar, and towards the channel of Mofambique. They added, that without mentioning other difficulties which must be encountered in their territories, it would be necessary, besides other rivers, to pass one which was too broad to be crossed by swimming, or to advance a great way towards the north to find a place where it could be forded; that they had seen several white people among the Tambouchis; that they themselves had purchased, by barter, several articles from these people; and, above all, a great number of nails procured from the wreck of the vessel, but that, being then at war with the Tambouchis,

bouchis,

bouchis, they could not get any more iron from them, though they were in great want of that commodity. They then begged me to give them some, the ordinary request of these poor wretches, which I little expected; but I answered their ungracious petition with a mortifying refusal.

To indemnify them, I distributed amongst them all my beads, toys, tinder-boxes, tinder, and a large quantity of tobacco; in return for which they begged me to accept a couple of their oxen: I however replied, that instead of taking from them a blessing so valuable to unfortunate people, I wished rather to be in a situation that might enable me to augment the number of their cattle. This mark of kindness touched them the more, as they consider the white people to be the most dangerous and mischievous beings in the world. With that ingenuous and sincere modesty which is ever afraid of hurting those on whom it bestows praise, they made a confession to me which remained long imprinted in my memory: Hans declared to me, in their name, and in very energetic terms, that I resembled the only *worthy man* of my race whom they had ever met with; some years



before they had seen this worthy man on the Boshman river, the banks of which they then inhabited, and from which the planters had never yet been able to expel them: he was, as they said, a man who, like me, travelled merely for curiosity. I could easily perceive that they alluded to Colonel Gordon; and they were extremely happy to understand that we lived in strict friendship together: they even begged me to intercede with him when I returned to the Cape, and to prevail upon him to lay before government a true and affecting picture of their misery, and of the destitute condition into which they had been thrown by the atrocious injustice of their persecutors.

I spent all this day in conversing with these Caffres respecting their manners, customs, religion, taste, and resources; and I always found that their answers corresponded with what had been related to me by those whom I had first seen. They told me, with equal sincerity, whatever tended to criminate themselves, or to do them honour; and my Hottentots found them so peaceable and unsuspecting, that they requested at night that I would permit them all to remain amongst

us. I continued to converse with them for some time, and then retired to my tent, to prepare for the labours of the next morning.

As soon as day appeared, whilst the Caffres were preparing to depart, I assembled my Hottentots. The reflections which their familiarity with these savages, whom they dreaded more than wild beasts, enabled them to make, and their conversation with one another when I had retired to my tent, made me immediately resolve what course to pursue. Not wishing to give them an opportunity of acquiring any merit from determining what plan was best to be adopted in the present conjuncture; but, on the contrary, apprehending that they might borrow from me those ideas of prudence and composure useful to my designs, whatever they might in future be; I told them, that after what they, as well as I, had heard the evening before, respecting the difficulties of advancing farther, and the danger of being attacked by the Tambouchis and the Boshmen who were traversing Caffraria, my intention was to return to Koks-Kraal; that in consequence of this, if we directed our course towards the west, we could not fail of falling in with the river

Groot-Vis, and that then, by going up its banks for several days, according as things might appear, we should undoubtedly soon reach our camp: I however added, that they were all at liberty to deliver their opinion on the proposal which I had made. I could see too plainly, by the looks of all my people, what pleasure they received from my resolution; and they all gave me the honour of starting an idea to which they had as much pretension as I. My collection was now become so bulky, that I had no hopes of increasing it, for I scarcely knew where to place it.

I afterwards declared, that when I reached Koks-Kraal I would remain there no longer than might be necessary to repair our carriages, and to prepare for going towards the snow mountains, from which I meant to proceed to the Cape by keeping more to the westward. I knew that this plan was not approved by any of my people, because in traversing these dry and barren deserts, in the time of the greatest drought, it would be necessary for us to encounter more than one difficulty; but being impatient to take a view of the natural curiosities contained in this country,

country, I had formed an irrevocable resolution to cross it, and the overture I made was only a stratagem to reconcile early to this idea such of my Hottentots as I had with me, in order that, when we returned to my camp, they might be better able to inspire their companions with confidence, and to testify the greater astonishment at their resistance, should they shew any.

Before I left these Caffres, I distributed among them, as well as among my Hottentots, a quantity of tobacco; and I reserved no more than was sufficient to serve us till we returned to our camp. This made room for the birds with which we were encumbered, and also for those that I might be able to procure by the way. These ten savages assisted us to pack up our baggage and to yoke our oxen; after which we wished one another a good journey, and set out to pursue two opposite routes, they towards the north and we towards the south.

We spent three days, during which nothing remarkable happened, in reaching the so much wished for banks of the Groot-Vis. This forced march having fatigued both us and our cattle considerably, I resolved to pass

the next day on the banks of the river, both with a view to refresh ourselves, and to see what discoveries I might make in the neighbourhood. We were at this time under no uneasiness respecting water, and we had been in no want of it during the three days that we employed in searching for the river, which we knew would conduct us to the place of our destination; but we could not precisely ascertain the time which might be necessary to follow its course to our camp. It was possible that high mountains and other obstacles might oblige the Groot-Vis, before it discharged itself into the sea, to form some bendings, which must have greatly prolonged our journey. We went along its banks very peaceably for three days more, still keeping close to it; and at length, on the morning of the fourth, we perceived the high mountain, the back part of which we had seen soon after our departure. This sight made my people shout for joy. We were now about to revisit our camp, our herds, our riches, and our companions; we therefore quickened our pace, and, late in the evening, without being observed, reached the happy spot. All were sunk in the most profound tranquillity, and nothing could have

have

have given me more pleasure than the agreeable surprize of this precipitate arrival. The horrid noise made by my dogs immediately spread the alarm; all hastened towards us; they knew our voices; and, even to the most insensible animals, all seemed to share in the general joy: above all, we could not disengage ourselves from my dogs, which teased us by their caresses and stunned us with their barking. Another spectacle however appeared to me no less interesting: my family had increased considerably: at my departure a small detachment from the worthy Gonaquas had quitted their horde, and had established themselves in the same place which I assigned to the Caffres, where they had constructed several new huts. They informed me, and indeed I plainly saw by the admirable order that prevailed in the camp, that every thing had been quiet during my absence: we had been the whole subject of conversation to those we had left. Every evening Swanepoel gave me the most favourable accounts of each separately; he told me, that the first fifteen days having elapsed without hearing any news of me, he could not help entertaining a little fear, and that he

was apprehensive he should not see me till I returned to the Cape, as he was persuaded that, unless I met with insurmountable obstacles, I would still proceed as long as I had ammunition.

I honestly confess, that having been for nearly a month deprived of the comforts and enjoyments of my camp, I was exceedingly happy to find myself returned; and I had the highest satisfaction in the fidelity and attachment of these Hottentots, so feeble and timid, whom I had not been afraid to abandon to themselves. It was therefore now time that I should shew them my gratitude: on this account I proclaimed with a loud voice that it was *Saturday*; and this declaration, which passed from mouth to mouth even to the Gonaquas, seemed still to add to their agitation. This circumstance requires some explanation, which I shall give with fresh pleasure; for the remembrance of these trifling but agreeable methods I pursued to vary my amusements, and in an uninhabitable desert to convert the simplest object into a subject of pleasantry and entertainment, announces the greatest tranquillity, and makes me, even when surrounded by the arts, and  
agitated

agitated by pride and vanity, lament that I can no longer distinguish my own character.

When I set out from the Cape, I did not neglect to carry an almanack with me; but in order to have some certain method of reckoning, and to keep my journal correct, I made all the months to consist of thirty days. As I never passed one without giving an account of it, I considered it as a matter of indifference whether or not I distinguished the weeks, and marked the days by their proper names, but I determined to distribute among my Hottentots their allowance of tobacco every Saturday. If it happened that, not choosing to give myself the trouble of consulting my book, I asked them what the day was, I could easily guess what answer they would give me; according to their calculation it was always Saturday: so that, when I looked at my register after travelling fifteen months, I found seven or eight of these Saturdays which belonged to no week.

I found myself therefore, as usual, surrounded by my numerous family; and whilst all of them, and even the Gonaqua women, were smoking their pipes round a large fire, and en-



joying a double allowance of brandy, I regaled myself very cheerfully with my tea.

Having mentioned to them the route which I intended to pursue next day, I found that they were already informed of it, and that they did not make so many remonstrances and objections as I expected. I perceived that my journey was approaching to a close; and that every body, exhausted by fatigue, thought any road good that appeared to bring us nearer to the Cape; but the passage through the mountains of *Snew-Bergen*, the usual haunt of the Boshmen, made more than one of my brave attendants tremble. I fixed my departure for the eighth, in order that I might have time to repair my carriages, to make new wooden work to support the top of that in which I rode, to cover the canvass of it with new mats, to replace our old traces from the hides of the buffaloes killed during my absence, and to cast balls and small shot. All this required considerable time; and no less was necessary to arrange the collection which I had formed in Caffraria, and to consign to my journal the result of my researches respecting that

4

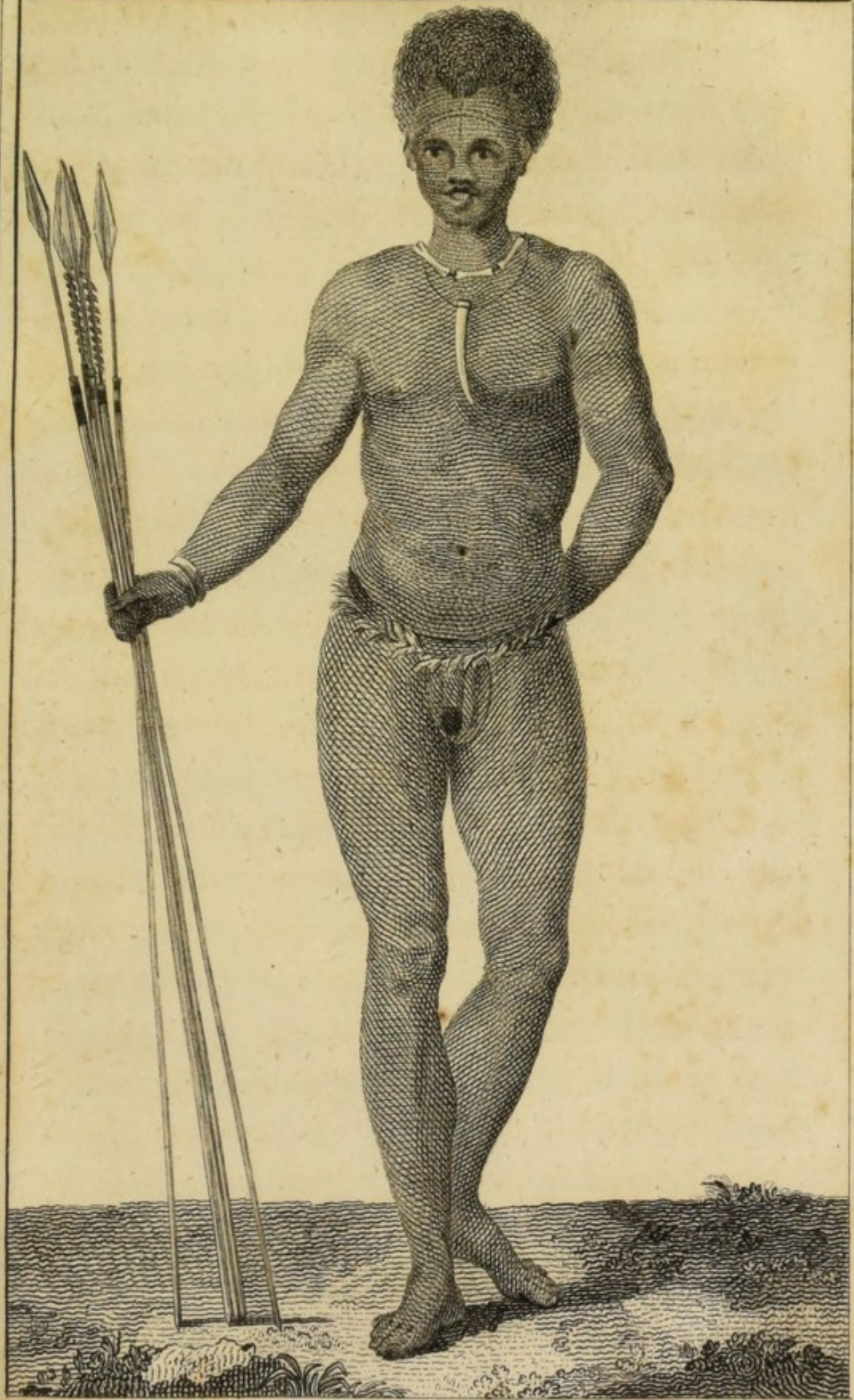
country

country and its inhabitants. For the sake of expedition, my people exerted themselves considerably; and I shut myself up in my tent, and hastened, while my observations were still fresh in my memory, to reduce them into some order.

To judge of the Caffres from those I have seen, they are generally taller than the Hottentots, and even than the Gonaquas; they however approach much nearer to the latter; but they appear to be more robust, more fierce, and much bolder. Their figure is likewise more agreeable, and their countenances have not that narrowness at bottom, nor their cheeks those prominences which are so disagreeable among the Hottentots; neither have they those broad flat faces and thick lips of their neighbours, the negroes of Mofambique. A round figure, a nose not too flat, a broad forehead, and large eyes, give them an open and lively air; and if prejudice can overlook the colour of the skin, there are some Caffre women who, even when seated by an European lady, would be accounted extremely pretty. The fifth and sixth plates represent a Caffre man and a Caffre woman drawn from nature. These people

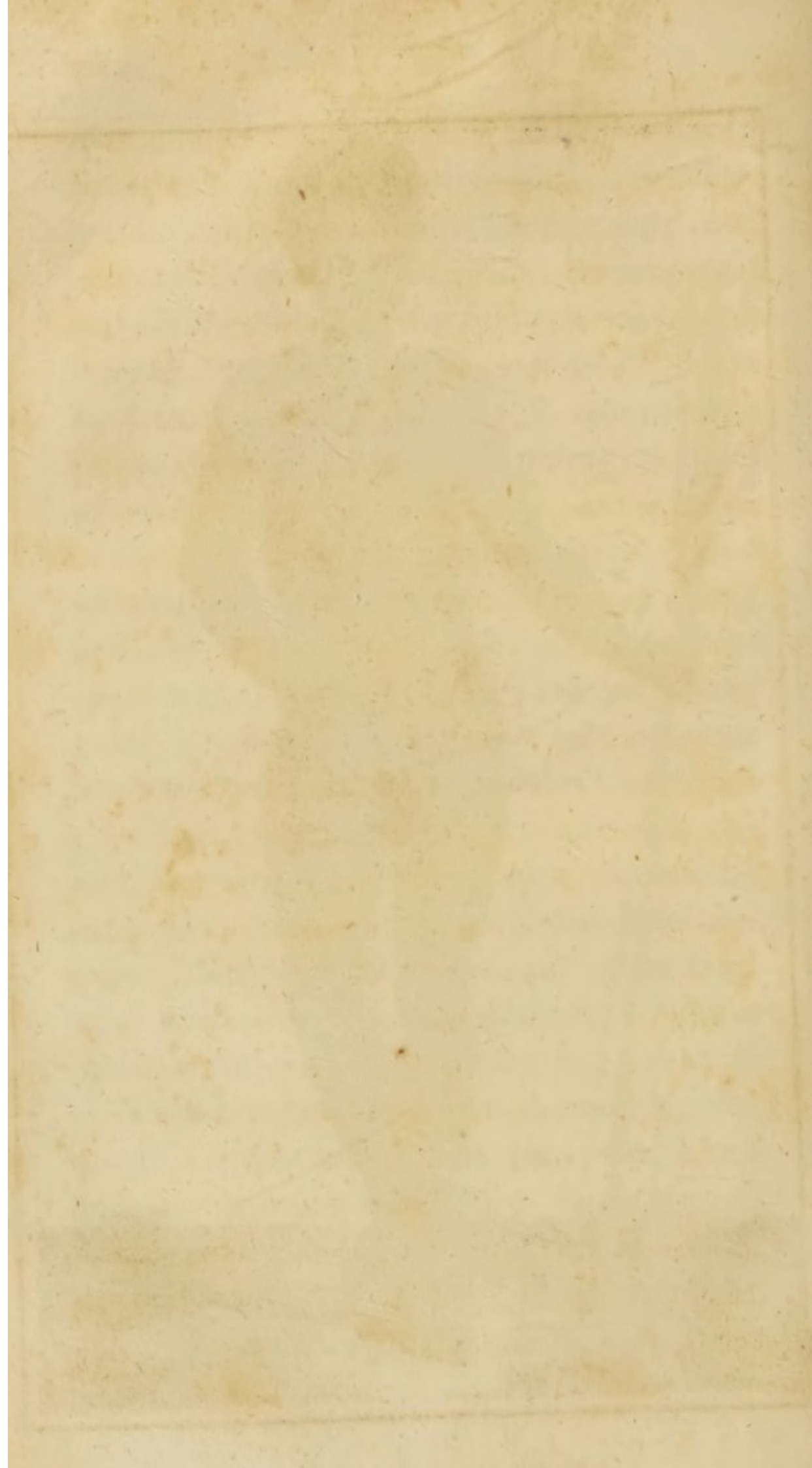
people do not make their faces ridiculous by pulling out their eyebrows like the Hot-tentots; they tattoo themselves much, and particularly their bodies: they never grease their hair, which is frizled in a very great degree; but this is not the case with respect to the rest of their body, and they follow this practice merely with a view to preserve agility and vigour.

The men generally bestow more attention on their drefs than the women; and they are remarkably fond of beads and copper rings. They, for the most part, wear bracelets on their arms and legs, made of elephants tusks, which they form into natural rings, of greater or less thickness, by sawing through the hollow part; after which they make them round on the outside, and give them a fine polish. As these large rings do not open, they must be of such a size that the hand can pass through them, in order that they may be put upon the arm; on which account they are always easy, and move up and down one against the other. If small rings of this kind are given to children, in proportion as they increase in years the vacuum is filled up; and as they then ad-  
here



Cook. Sc.

A CAFFRE MAN.



here firmly to the arm, they become a luxury which is highly pleasing to those who have been thus decorated in their youth. They make necklaces also of the bones of animals ranged on a string, which they have the art of whitening and polishing in the most perfect manner. Some of them are contented with the whole bone of a leg of mutton; and this ornament makes a very conspicuous figure on the breast of a Caffre: it has the same effect as a patch on the face of a pretty woman in Europe. The Gonaqua women, as may be seen in the plate which represents them, practise the same coquetry. They substitute sometimes for this bone the horn of an antelope, or any thing else, according to their caprice; and I am of opinion, that one would see as many varieties, and as many fantastical ornaments in their dress, as are seen in Europe, provided they had the same means and the same resources. They, however, always employ the same materials, because they have no kinds of stuff to supply the place of those skins with which they clothe themselves. It would appear that they are not so chaste as the Hottentots, because they do not use a jackal to veil what  
nature

nature bids them conceal. A small cowl, which covers only the glans, instead of displaying modesty, seems to announce the greatest indecency. This small covering adheres to a thong, which is fastened round their girdles merely that it may not be lost; for a Caffre, if he is not afraid of being hurt or stung by insects, cares very little whether this cowl be in its place or not. I never saw but one man who, instead of a cowl, wore a case made of wood, ornamented with sculpture: this was a new and ridiculous fashion, which he had borrowed from a nation of black people who lived at a great distance from Caffraria. In the hot season the Caffres go always naked, and retain nothing but their ornaments: in cold weather they wear krosses made of calves or oxen's hides, which reach down to the ground. They are faithfully delineated in the fifth and sixth plates, which represent a young Caffre holding a bundle of assagays, and a woman giving suck to her child.

A peculiarity, which is perhaps to be found no where else, and which deserves some attention, is, that the Caffre women set very little value upon dress: as they are, in comparison



A CAFFRE WOMAN.

*Heath Sc.*



J. C. ALLEN BOSTON

parison of other savages, well made and pretty, they perhaps have also good sense enough to believe that ornaments are rather calculated to veil imperfections than to set off beauties; however this may be, one never sees amongst them that display and profusion of them which are common among the Hottentot women. They do not even wear copper bracelets; but their small aprons, which are still shorter than those of the Gonaquas, are bordered with a few rows of glass beads, and in this all their luxury consists. The skin which the female Hottentots wear on their reins behind, among the Caffre women rises to their arm-pits, and is fastened round the neck, which it covers. Like their husbands, they have krosses of the skins of calves or oxen, but always more smooth: they, however, use neither the one nor the other except in cold or rainy weather. These skins are as soft and pliable as our finest stuffs; and with regard to the process which the Caffres employ to dress them, it is almost the same as that of the Hottentots.

Whatever the weather or the season may be, both sexes go bareheaded. I have indeed

deed sometimes observed a plume of feathers fixed in their hair; but this whimsical ornament is very uncommon.

The precautions taken by the Caffre women when they bring forth children, and in their periodical indispositions, are absolutely the same as those observed by the Gonaqua or Hottentot women.

Their daily occupations are confined to the fabrication of earthen-ware, which they form with as much ingenuity as their husbands. Those which I had with me in my camp, having found clay fit for their purpose, did not lose this opportunity of making pipkins, and other vessels which are in use amongst them. At their departure they carried with them a sufficient provision of this earth, with which they loaded their oxen. It is the women also, as I have already said, who weave their baskets: they likewise prepare the fields for receiving seed; but they rather scratch it up with wooden pickaxes than till it.

The Caffre huts, more spacious and higher than those of the Hottentots, have also a more regular form; it is absolutely that of a perfect hemisphere. The frames of them

are constructed of wooden work, well put together and very solid, because it is intended to last a long time. This they afterwards cover, both within and without, with a kind of mud or plaster made of cows dung and clay mixed up together, and spread over it very smoothly. These huts exhibit to the eye an air of neatness which the habitations of the Hottentots undoubtedly have not; and one would almost believe them to be done over with the finest cement. The only opening which they have is so low and narrow, that people must lie down on their bellies to enter it. This custom at first appeared to me highly ridiculous, and to be carried to a much greater length than among the Hottentots; but as they use these huts only in the night-time, it is easier, on this account, to defend oneself either against animals, or the sudden attacks of an enemy. The floors of them are covered with the same substance as the walls; and in the centre is formed a circular hearth, surrounded by a border two or three inches in height, to contain the fire, and preserve the hut from any danger which it might occasion. Around the hut, at the distance of five or

six inches, they dig a small trench, about a foot and a half in depth, and as much in breadth, for the purpose of receiving the waters; and this precaution secures it from all moisture. In different cantons I visited and surveyed more than seven hundred of these huts; but I never saw one of a square form, as some authors have pretended. Besides, I suppose it is of little importance to the reader to know whether these savages lodge in round or in square habitations; but I must remark, that, by mentioning every thing, one may soon or late, discover those travellers who have only seen a part of what they have related.

The fields of the Hottentots being either by the soil, their position, or the number of small rivers which water them, much more fertile than those of the Hottentots, it necessarily follows, that the Caffres, who apply to agriculture, remain fixed to one spot; and this is always the case when nothing interrupts their repose. The same fields which gave them birth, is also the scene of their latest moments, unless they are attacked, I do not say by barbarous persecutors only, who thirst after their blood, but by some of those

those destructive scourges which spare neither men nor animals, and which spread desolation in a moment throughout immense regions. A neat and solid habitation, constructed near a rivulet, in the middle of a cultivated field which they have inherited from their fathers, is enough to enrich the language of the Caffres with the agreeable appellation of country; which the wandering indifference of the Hottentots will prevent them from ever knowing.

I have, however, made a remark, which, though it may appear strange, is nevertheless certain and general: notwithstanding the forests and beautiful woods with which Caffraria is covered; notwithstanding those delightful pastures which rise to such a height as to conceal the herds that are scattered here and there in the fields; and notwithstanding those rivers and streams which cross each other in a thousand different directions to render them rich and fertile; their oxen, their cows, and almost all their animals, are much smaller than those of the Hottentots—a difference which undoubtedly arises from the nature of the sap, and a certain flavour predominant in every kind of grass. I have

made this observation not only on the domestic animals of the cantons which I traversed, but also on those which were wild, and I really found them smaller than those I had before seen in the dry and parched countries. I remarked, in my tour among the Nimiquas, who inhabit mere rocks and the most barren parts perhaps of all Africa, that their oxen were the most beautiful I had ever seen; and that even the elephants and the hippopotami were much more robust than any where else. The little pasture which is to be met with in these miserable places, is likewise exceedingly tender and sweet. This quality in the herbs may be easily distinguished, and I employed a particular method to discover it. After I arrived in any canton, when my cattle returned from pasture, I judged of the harshness of the grass upon which they had fed, by their dispersing themselves all over my camp, and eagerly searching for the bones left by my dogs, in order to ease their teeth. As these bones were of a calcareous nature, by gnawing them they blunted the force of that irritation and acidity which tormented them. We therefore never threw our bones into the fire.

When

When these were wanting, dry wood or stones supplied their place; and when they could not find these resources, they even gnawed each other's horns. When the pastures were good, this ceremony never took place.

A more perceptible industry, an acquaintance with some of the most necessary arts, a little knowledge of agriculture, and a few religious dogmas, seem to announce that the Caffres are a much more civilized people than those who live farther south. Circumcision, which they generally practise, proves that they either owe their origin to some ancient people, from whom they have degenerated, or that they have only copied it from neighbours, of whom they have at present no remembrance; for when one speaks to them of this ceremony, they say it is neither from religion nor any other mystic cause that they adopt it. They however entertain a very exalted idea of the Supreme Being, and of his power: and they believe in a future state, and that the wicked will be punished, and the good rewarded; but they have no idea of the creation. They imagine that the world existed from eternity, and that it



will always remain as it is at present. In other respects they use no religious ceremonies, and they never offer up prayers; so that we may justly say they have no religion at all, if there be no religion without worship. They take upon themselves the care of educating their own children. Though they have no priests, they have magicians, who are much feared and revered by the greater part; but I never had the satisfaction of seeing any of them. Notwithstanding all their credit, I am very doubtful whether they impose as much upon the vulgar as ours. These Caffres suffer themselves to be governed by a general chief or king, whose power, as I have had occasion to observe, is very limited. As he receives no subsidies, he cannot maintain troops, and he is far from having it in his power to be despotic. He is the father of a free people, but he is neither feared nor respected. He is often much poorer than any of his subjects, because, being at liberty to take as many wives as he chooses, and as these women think it an honour to belong to him, the expences occasioned by this regal train, and which he is obliged to take from his private treasury,

treasury, I mean his fields, his cattle, &c. ruin his property, and reduce it to nothing. His hut is neither higher nor better ornamented than any of the rest; and he collects his seraglio and his family around him, which compose a group of twelve or fifteen huts at most. The fields which surround them are generally those that he cultivates, and it is customary for each person to gather in his own crops, in order to dispose of them in whatever manner he thinks proper. The grain which they reap is the favourite nourishment of the Caffres: they pound and bruise it between two stones; and on this account, each family separating from the rest that they may have their productions within their reach, a single horde, not very numerous, often occupies a league square of ground, which is never the case among the Gonaquas or the Hottentots.

This distance of the different hordes from one another renders it necessary that they should have chiefs, who are appointed by the king. When he has any thing to communicate to them of great importance for the nation, he sends for them, and tells them his orders, or, I ought rather to say, his news.

The different chiefs then return to make them known to those who are under them.

The arms of the Caffres, a plain lance or assagay, announces something grand and intrepid in their character. They despise poisoned arrows, which are so much used among their neighbours, and consider them as unworthy of their courage. They always seek to meet their enemy face to face, and they never can throw their assagays until they are in the open fields. The Hottentot, on the contrary, concealed under a rock or behind a bush, deals out destruction without being exposed to danger. The one is a perfidious tiger, which rushes treacherously on his prey; and the other is a generous lion, which having given warning of his approach, makes his attack boldly, and perishes if he does not get the better of his antagonist. The inequality of his arms is not capable of making him hesitate a moment, for his courage and spirit supply every deficiency. In the time of war, indeed, he carries a buckler of about three feet in height, made of the thickest part of a buffalo's hide, which is sufficient to defend him from arrows, and even assagays, but not from a ball. The  
Caffre

Caffre manages also, with much address, a weapon no less terrible than the assagay, when he falls in with his enemy. This weapon is a club, two feet and a half in length, made of one piece of wood, or of a root, three inches in diameter where thickest, and decreasing in size towards one of its extremities. Sometimes he will dart it to the distance of fifteen or twenty paces, and it is very rare that he does not hit the proposed mark. I have seen one of these savages kill a partridge in this manner the moment it sprang up from the ground.

The sovereign power is hereditary in the king's family, and the prince is always succeeded by his eldest son; but in default of male heirs, the nearest nephews, and not his brothers, are the successors. In cases where the sovereign leaves neither nephews nor children, a king is then chosen from among the chiefs of the different hordes. Upon these occasions a spirit of party sometimes prevails, which gives rise to factions and intrigues that generally end in bloodshed.

Polygamy is used among these Caffres and their marriages are still simpler than those of the Hottentots. The parents of the

bridegroom are always contented with the choice he has made, but those of the bride inspect into matters a little more narrowly. They, however, seldom start many difficulties; they drink, dance, and make merry for whole weeks, according to the riches of the two families: but these festivals never take place, except when one marries for the first time; in other cases every thing is transacted in private. The Caffres are no better acquainted with music, and have no other instruments than the Hottentots, except that I saw amongst them a wretched flute scarcely worth being mentioned. They use the English step in their dances, but in other respects they are almost the same.

On the death of a father the male children and the mother share the succession between them. The girls receive no part of it, and they remain with their mother until they can procure a husband. If they marry while their parents are alive they receive nothing else for a dowry but a few cattle, in proportion to the riches of either.

In general they do not inter their dead; they are transported from the kraal by the family, and deposited in a ditch which is open  
and

and common to the whole horde. Savage animals often go thither to feed at their leisure, and this preserves the air pure, which would otherwise soon become corrupted, by the multitude of carcasses that are heaped together. Funeral honours are due only to kings and the chiefs of each horde. The bodies are covered with a heap of stones, collected into the form of a dome; and this accounts for that series of small mounts seen ranged in a line near Bruyntjes-Hoogte, which formerly belonged to the Caffres.

I am not acquainted with the disposition of the Caffres in respect to love, and I do not know whether they are jealous. I however imagine that they are so only with their own countrymen; for they readily give up their women to the first white man who wishes to enjoy them, provided they receive a small retribution. Hans repeatedly gave me to understand, that all those whom I admitted into my camp were at my service, and that I had nothing to do but to make a choice: indeed there were no kind of allurements which they did not throw out before their husbands to lead me into their snares; and the latter were

perhaps only offended at the cool manner in which I seemed to receive their addresses.

I will not enlarge farther on these details, as I conceive I have said enough to shew how far these people differ from their neighbours, when there is no other communication between them but that established by bloody wars and continual enmity.

The eighth, that happy day which was to bring us nearer the Cape, at length appeared, upon which I made a general review of my carriages, equipage, and oxen, &c. I had arranged my new collections, and surveyed those which I procured before; the balls and shot necessary for our hunting excursions were cast; my oxen, which for a long time had enjoyed rest, and abundance of excellent pasture, were full and in good condition: in a word, I was ready to depart; but I allowed two days more to take leave of our worthy neighbours, and to amuse ourselves with them.

When the news of my resolution were spread abroad, I soon saw the whole horde arriving, both men and women, in clusters. Haabas was at their head, while all who could walk followed him, and ran up to bid

us farewell before we departed. I was extremely happy that they had come to spend these two days with us. The good Haabas introduced to me four or five Gonaquas of another horde, who having heard mention made of me, had been deputed to invite me to visit their canton. This request was made too late; but I softened my refusal by promising to remember their invitation the next time that I undertook a journey into those countries.

During these two days both parties gave themselves up to all the extravagance of joy and pleasure; my brandy was not spared, nor the hydromel which Haabas had made on purpose and brought along with him; but the beautiful Narina and her sister, who were of the party, took no share in these orgies. Sadness had above all disfigured the features of Narina, whom I comforted as well as I could by giving her a few presents. I gave her some also for her sister, her mother, and her friends; in a word, I disposed upon this occasion of the greater part of my toys: but dress at this time was not what principally engaged her attention. To Haabas and his people I gave every thing I could spare without



without hurting me, and without depriving myself of those resources which were necessary for my return. Tobacco above all was distributed with great profusion among these worthy savages, and I reserved only as much as might be sufficient to supply my people till we reached the Cape.

After this I took the venerable Haabas aside, and pressed him in an affectionate manner, and even with emotion, to follow the advice which I had given him respecting his own preservation, and that of his whole horde. I endeavoured to persuade him that the apparent tranquillity of the planters, always assembled in the same place, seemed to forebode some new project, and consequently new acts of treachery; and that his kraal being situated just between the planters and the Caffres, he might soon or late become a victim either to the one or the other.

He promised that he would remove to a proper distance as soon as I had departed; telling me that he had not formed this resolution sooner, as he wished to have the pleasure of seeing me again on my return from Caffraria: but he added, with that affection and love of which he had given me so many proofs,

proofs, that if the times became fortunate, that is to say, if peace should be restored, he was determined to establish himself in my camp, in remembrance of his benefactor, and because he could not find a more agreeable spot.

On the 4th of Detember I departed: but in vain should I attempt to describe the consternation of the Gonaquas; one might have said that I was abandoning them to the wild beasts, and that by losing me they lost every thing. With still more difficulty could I describe my own internal sensations. I had now given the signal, and my people, my carriages, and my cattle, were already on their way: I therefore slowly followed this convoy, leading my horse by the bridle; and while I neither looked behind me, nor uttered a single syllable, I suffered my tears to relieve the sad oppression of my heart.

My worthy and sincere friends, I shall behold you no more!—Whatever may be the cause of those tender sentiments which you have sworn to entertain towards me—be happy!—The source of them is not purer in Europe than among you—be happy! No force is capable of destroying the remembrance

brance of them. Confiding in my adieus, my regret, and my tears, you have perhaps long expected me in your calamities; your deceived simplicity has perhaps brought you back more than once to those happy spots which were the scenes of our meetings and of our festivals; you have in vain sought for me; in vain have you called me to assist you: I could neither comfort nor defend you, immense tracts of country separate us for ever. But think no more of me. May no foolish hope disturb the tranquillity of your moments; such an idea would embitter all my days. I have again submitted to the chains of society; I shall die like so many others, borne down by an enormous load: but I can at least say, with my latest breath, “ my name is already effaced from the remembrance of my friends, while the traces of my feet still remain visible among the Go-naquas.”

From the information I received, I concluded that we should find the snow-mountains to the east; and that by leaving Bruyntjes-Hoogte on my left, and crossing that chain of mountains which bear the same name, though they extend to a considerable

derable distance, we must infallibly arrive at the former, at the distance of forty or fifty leagues, more or less, according to the way by which the windings might oblige me to conduct my carriages and baggage.

I had heard such different accounts of these mountains, that I was extremely desirous of seeing them, and of crossing them at my leisure; but I was not able to reach them so soon as I expected. Besides, being informed that the elevation and coldness of their summits rendered them uninhabitable during several months of the year, this new climate seemed to promise new productions, and varieties of different kinds, worthy of exciting my curiosity.

Though the heat was excessive we advanced full six leagues; and at one in the afternoon we stopped at the ruins of a kraal which had been dreadfully ravaged. Its wretched inhabitants had probably been surpris'd and massacred on the spot, as the ground was strewd with human bones and fragments of carcasses; a disgusting sight from which we hastened to remove.

Having set out at four in the evening, after a march of four hours, we reached a deserted

ferted habitation, from which nothing had been carried away except the furniture. I intended to pass the night here; but scarcely had we arranged ourselves, when I perceived a most extraordinary itching all over my body; upon which I uncovered my breast, and found it quite black with innumerable swarms of fleas. My Hottentots themselves were not entirely exempt from the attacks of these importunate vermin; and on this account we instantly quitted these infectious places, which my people named the *camp of fleas*, and went to establish ourselves at a little distance, on the banks of a limpid and delightful rivulet, into which I plunged without taking time to undress. As my body was absolutely speckled, Klaas advised me, when I quitted the bath, to suffer myself to be rubbed in the manner of the savages. I was therefore greased and *boghoused* for the first time in my life, and I must confess that I found myself much easier. Though we had stopt only a quarter of an hour in this unlucky spot, my dogs and my carriages were covered with these insects. The balsamic operation to which I had just submitted was the only means to secure me from them,

them, until length of time, or a shower of rain, might free us from them entirely. On account of this process, which is familiar to the Hottentots, they had been less attacked by them than their master.

The new situation which we occupied, and in which we passed the night, was not destitute of beauties. On the north we were flanked by immense forests of the same kinds of trees as those before mentioned; and the plain was covered with the mimosa, which the planters name *dooren-boom*: I had the pleasure of seeing it in full blossom. This to me was a lucky circumstance; and I did not neglect to take advantage of it; for, as I have said, the flowers of this tree attract vast numbers of curious insects, which are seldom to be found but at this season; and these insects, in their turn, draw thither large flocks of birds of every kind, to which they serve as food. I settled, therefore, in this plain, where I amused myself in changing my place of encampment. I had reason to conclude that all the borders of the forest had been inhabited by Caffres; for we could not move a step without seeing the remains of ancient huts, more or less des-

troyed by the hand of time. In this place I found, without any difficulty, two kinds of antelope, the gnou and the spring-bock. The silence of the night never appeared to me more majestic than here. The roaring of the lion resounded around us at certain intervals; but the conversations of these ferocious animals could not frighten us, nor interrupt our repose, after having been accustomed to them, and to live in the midst of them for more than twelve months. We, however, did not neglect our usual precautions. I was increasing my collection every day, more and more; and I enriched it here with a magnificent bird entirely unknown to ornithologists: my people called it *uyt-lager*, or the mock-bird. As soon as it perceived any of us, or one of our animals, more of the same species instantly appeared in scores; and perching upon the branches nearest to us, raising themselves perpendicularly on their feet, and balancing their bodies from one side to another, they stunned us by repeating in a very precipitate manner these syllables, *gra, ga, ga, ga*. These poor animals seemed to hurry to their own destruction; for we killed as many of them as we chose.

This

This bird is almost of the size of the black-bird; its plumage, which is of a golden green, reflects somewhat of purple; its long tail is shaped like the head of a lance, and, like the feathers of the wings, it is beautifully spotted with white: the bill, which is hooked and long is remarkable as well as the feet, by being of a most beautiful red colour. It climbs along the branches of trees, to find insects on which it feeds; and when they conceal themselves under the bark, it detaches it very dexterously with its beak.

We must not call this bird a wood-pecker, though it seems to have a considerable resemblance to it. Very essential characteristics, as will afterwards appear, separate it from that class.

Having one evening remarked that they came in flocks, without any precaution, or being in the least alarmed at our presence, to repose in different holes in the trunk of a large tree, near which we were encamped, I ordered several of these holes to be closed; and next morning, when I opened them with great care, I had the pleasure of seizing these birds by their bills, as they made their ap-



pearance in order to escape. This method is certainly easy and simple; and barbets and wood-peckers of every species may be procured in the same manner; but, as the latter conceal themselves better than the former, it is more difficult to discover them. An observation which I consider as very just, is, that all birds which have two toes before and two behind, retire to hollow trees during the night-time; but this, however, does not deprive other species, such as the titmouse, the nut-hatch\*, &c. of the same instinct.

It would be highly imprudent to thrust one's hand into these holes without being certain what they contain; for they are often inhabited by small quadrupedes of the size of a rat; and serpents also sometimes get into them, in order to devour the birds or the eggs: and though these reptiles, for the most part, are not noxious, they never fail to occasion great terror, which people cannot always suppress. That species called *kooperkapel*, of which I have already spoken, glide up trees very easily, and may also take shelter in some of these holes: people, then,

\* In French *Torchepot*. *Sitta Europæa*, Linn. T.

would be exposed to something more than fear, and pay dear for their imprudent curiosity.

On the 16th we pursued our journey. In five different encampments I traversed all the country, which we were about to quit. After marching three hours, I found myself on the banks of the Klein-Vis river; so that I could not advance farther that day: and we spent a great deal of time in endeavouring to find a part of the river fordable for my carriages. In this place they had before been in great danger of being overset.

The following day having crossed the river without sustaining any loss, I saw another deserted habitation; but I had not the curiosity to approach it. Some leagues farther we found abundance of mimosas, and all as completely in blossom as those I had left the evening before. I yielded the more readily to the temptation which induced me to stop on the borders of these forests, as I observed a variety of birds which I had nowhere seen, and, for the second time, that kind of parroquet of which I have before spoken. Wandering to a little distance, I found myself in a small meadow, amidst a

wood of very bushy trees. This peaceful desert seemed to be favourable for my operations, and very convenient for my carriages; but to convey them through bushes and branches which crossed each other in a thousand different directions, appeared to be a work of great difficulty. We had, however, overcome obstacles even more insurmountable; and this, like all the rest, gave way to our exertions. On the 19th, after much labour and fatigue, I accomplished my design; but I had the misfortune to lose one of my best oxen, which was driven with so much violence against one of the mimosas that its prickles penetrated the animal's breast, and broke in the flesh. We extracted in the best manner we could all those which appeared, or which we could lay hold of, with a pair of pincers; but, as our art extended no farther, those which had sunk deeper, and which we could neither lay hold of nor perceive, occasioned so great an inflammation, that, after twenty-four hours, all the consultations of my best physicians ended in a resolution of putting the patient to death, which was immediately executed.

These woods swarmed with touracos,  
which

which were more familiar, and appeared to be much larger than those of the forests of Auteniqua. I found here also a new species of calao; and, among other birds which I had never before seen, I distinguished a blackbird with an orange-coloured belly; which, besides the pleasure occasioned by this discovery, gave me also an opportunity of remarking the simplicity of the Hottentots.

Pit having brought me this bird, which was a female, I ordered him to return instantly to the spot where he had killed it, not doubting that he would find the male; but he begged me to dispense with his services upon this occasion, as he durst not venture to fire at it. I however continued to insist upon his obeying; but what was my astonishment when I saw him with an affected air, and in a tone almost lamentable, declare that some misfortune would undoubtedly ensue; that he had scarcely killed the female, when the male began to pursue him with great fury, continually repeating *Pit-me-wrou, Pit-me-wrou!* It must be observed that these two words exactly represent the animal's cry; and I was more convinced of this afterwards, by killing one of these

blackbirds, than by the vain terrors of Pit. The syllables it seems to pronounce are three Dutch words, which signify *Pit* or *Peter my wife*; and Pit imagined that the bird, calling him by his name, requested him to return his mate. I found it almost impossible to calm the disturbed imagination of this man, who persisted in refusing to fire on these birds; and had any unlucky accident happened to him during our marches or hunting excursions, whatever might have been the cause of it, his companions would not have failed to ascribe it to his killing the first of these blackbirds. This belief, founded on a fact which I myself had an opportunity of being convinced of, might, in the deserts of Africa, have established the first miracle of a new religion.

In every part of this forest I found a species of apes with black visages; but I could never catch any of them. Leaping from one tree to another, as if bidding me defiance, they in turns appeared and disappeared in an instant; whilst I fatigued myself to no purpose in pursuing them. One morning, however, after ranging for some time in the neighbourhood of my camp, I observed

4

about

about thirty of them seated on the branches of a tree, and exposing their white bellies to the first rays of the sun. As the tree which they had chosen was so much separated from the rest, that their shadow did not incommode them, I made a circuit through the bushes, and having approached as near to them as I could without being discovered, I ran up to the tree before they had time to descend. I was certain that none of them had escaped; but, notwithstanding this, I could not perceive one of them, though I cast my eyes round on every side, and walked backwards and forwards, examining the tree with the utmost attention. I resolved therefore to sit down at some distance from the root of it, and to watch until I could observe some motion; and after a considerable space of time I was amply repaid for my patience. I at length saw a head stretched out, apparently with a view of discovering what was become of me; upon which taking aim, I discharged my piece, and the animal instantly fell. I expected that the noise of the report would have frightened the rest of the troop: but this was not the case; and though I kept my post  
for

for half an hour longer, not one of them stirred or appeared. Tired of this fatiguing employment, I fired several times into the tree at random, and had the pleasure of seeing two more fall; while a third, which was only wounded, suspended itself by its tail from a small branch: another discharge brought this one down also; and, being satisfied with my spoil, I collected my four apes, and set out to return to my camp. When I had got to a certain distance from the tree, I saw the whole troop, which, imagining that I was now too far from them to do any execution, descended with precipitation, and hastened towards the thickest part of the woods, sending forth loud cries. By some stragglers, which with difficulty followed the rest, halting either on one of the hind or fore feet, I concluded that several of them had been wounded by my shot; but in this precipitate flight I did not observe, as some travellers have said, that those unhurt assisted the lame ones, by taking them up on their shoulders, in order that their common retreat might not be retarded: and I am of opinion that, in this respect, when attacked, they are like the Hottentots, whose atten-

tion is too much engaged with their own safety to think of that of others.

When I returned to my tent, I began to examine my capture. This species of ape is of a middle size; its hair, which is pretty long, has generally a greenish tint; its belly, as I have already remarked, is white, and its face is altogether black. Its rump is calous; and this part, which is entirely destitute of hair, as well as the organs of generation in the male, is of a fine blue colour. At the time when I was examining these animals, Kees entered my tent, and I imagined that he was about to give vent to loud cries, when he perceived them, though they were of a different species from him; but it appeared that he was not so much afraid of them when dead as when alive: he considered them one after the other, and turned them over several times in all directions, to examine them in the same manner as he had seen me. He was not, I believe, the *first monkey* who wished to set up for a naturalist; but he was strongly impelled by a secret motive much less generous than that of acquiring knowledge. By feeling the cheeks of the deceased, he had discovered some treasures;  
for



for I soon saw him venture to open their mouths, plunder their pouches\* of the almonds they had plucked from the tree called *geel-hout*, and consign them to his own.

My encampment in this place became highly interesting, and afforded me much riches: besides this, it was very agreeable to my people, and supplied plenty of provisions for my cattle. I remained in it, therefore, till the 28th, and left it with much regret. It was one of those which made me sensible how easy it would have been for me to forget that there are other climates, other manners, and other pleasures.

In the morning of the day following we decamped, and, after travelling three hours, we met a few savage Hottentots, who were driving some sheep before them, and going to join their respective hordes, from which they had separated; but for what purpose I did not learn. As I wanted provisions, I

\* Naturalists remark that apes have, between their cheeks and the inferior jaw-bones, a kind of bags or pouches, which serve them as magazines, in which they occasionally preserve such fruits as they have not time, or are not disposed to eat, till they are hungry.

purchased a couple of these animals from them, for which I paid them liberally, and we continued our journey together for above an hour; after which, their destination being different from ours, they left us to revisit their kraals that were a few leagues distant. Three hours after, we were stopped by the river-Klein-Vis, which, from the time that we crossed it, now appeared to us for the third time. The wheels of one of my carriages began here to give way; the spokes were so loose in the naves, that the least jolt made us tremble; a longer delay would only have increased the evil, and on this account I resolved to remain encamped some days in this place to repair it. In this place two days after, according to the new stile of my calendar, we spent the first day of the new year 1782.

The Hottentots, who have no comprehension of the solar year, are entirely unacquainted with the etiquette of the first day that begins it; no compliments therefore were paid on our part, and consequently there were no falsehoods told, and no hypocritical protestations made. I only gave myself, as a new-year's gift, a new hat, which had never  
been

been cocked, and I made my people shoot for my old one. Klaas having been so fortunate as to break the bottle to pieces, it would be impossible for me to describe his joy when he found that he had won the prize, and added to his wardrobe an article of so much value, and a piece of dress still more magnificent than the pair of old breeches which I gave him when I made my solemn entry among the Gonaquas.

Next morning, while we were busily employed on our waggon and wheels, a general joy seemed to be diffused over every countenance: and when I asked my people the cause of this sudden emotion, they came up to me, and pointed to a distant cloud, which seemed to be advancing towards us. In this phenomenon I found nothing that could occasion so much rejoicing; and I did not distinguish, till this pretended cloud had got nearer us, that it was composed of millions of locusts. I had often heard mention made of these insects, which every year collect themselves into innumerable swarms, and quit the places that gave birth to them, in order to establish themselves somewhere else; but this was the first time I ever saw them. They were indeed

so numerous, that they darkened the air; they did not, however, rise very high above our heads, and they formed a column which might be about three thousand feet in length, and, reckoning by my watch, three hours elapsed before they had passed us. This swarm were so close, that several of them, stifled or hurt by being dashed against the rest, fell down like hail, while Kees, who collected them, feasted on them with much pleasure.

They afforded an excellent treat also to my people, who extolled this manna so much that I yielded to the temptation, and wished to partake with them; but if it is true, as we are assured, that in Greece, and particularly at Athens, the public markets were always supplied with this food, and that it was much sought after by the epicures of the time, I freely confess, that I should have cut a very poor figure among these Acridophagi, unless Heaven, together with the taste of the Greeks, had bestowed upon me a different constitution.

On the 3d of January, we at length departed, and, leaving behind us that chain of mountains called Bruyntjes-Hoogte, we perceived

ceived to the north those of Snew-berg, for which we had been so long wishing. Though the hottest season was now arrived, we still observed snow in the fissures and ravines nearest the summits of these awful mountains. Whilst I was amusing myself in looking at them with my spy-glass, my Hottentots informed me that they saw a white man. This discovery affected me in a very sensible manner, for I had not seen any of that colour for several months. I found that this person had undertaken a very long journey, merely with a view to procure salt, at a lake situated near the river Swart-Kops; and having joined him, we conversed together for some time; but he could not refrain from shedding tears when he related to me that in the commencement of the war against Caffraria, in which he refused to assist the rest of the planters, he had been attacked, with his wife, an only son, and his Hottentots, by the Caffres, with whom he had always before kept up a friendly intercourse; that he and his family had quickly hid themselves in the bushes; but that, when day arrived, the whole troop united, and he found his son pierced through by a thousand assegays. The melancholy

lancholy tale of this unfortunate father filled me with great grief; and though I did not attempt to allay his, the most profound silence expressed, better than vain reasoning, what consolation he could expect from a feeling heart. He however confessed, that the hatred of the Caffres was inveterate, but that it was very unlucky for the innocent that the effects of their vengeance did not always fall upon those alone who deserved it.

To amuse him a little, I begged him to pass the night with me, and I treated him in the best manner I could. I regaled him with a dish of my nicest tea, and gave him some excellent tobacco. The thread of our conversation having conducted us, I know not how, to the subject of horses, he told me that one of his friends, who lived near the Swart Kops, had shewn him one which he had found when out on a hunting excursion, and that, not being able to discover to whom he belonged, he had kept him. This circumstance reminded me of the one I had left on the banks of the river Krom, at the end of the Ange-Kloof, seven or eight months before; and, after the account which I gave,

he was so firmly persuaded that this was my horse, that he immediately offered to let me pick out two of his best oxen, if I would consign my right over to him, and give him a letter to his friend that he might send for him. My horse undoubtedly was worth much more than he offered; but, considering on the one hand the difficulties and the delay that would be occasioned by undertaking so long a journey, and on the other the service that I might immediately receive from the two oxen which he offered me, and being desirous besides to shew him some mark of my esteem and friendship, I did not hesitate to accept his proposal, and I gave him a note to receive my horse.

I still continued my journey towards the Snew-Berg, which we continually kept in view, and at the bottom of which I flattered myself I should arrive the next day; but about eleven the excessive heat obliged us to halt on the banks of the Bly river, where we passed the night. This torrent was of little service to us, as the drought had dried it almost entirely up, so that we had nothing else to quench the thirst which tormented us but some bad-tasted stagnant water, that we  
found

found in some of the deepest parts of its bed. At the break of day we hastened to quit this disagreeable place, and, after a march of three hours and a half, we fell in with another river, named Birds river, where I remarked, among other singularities, that the more we approached the snow mountains the more intense the heat became. The piles of rocks which composed their lofty peaks, heated no doubt by the scorching sun, reflected his rays and concentrated them in the neighbouring valleys. As the whole caravan were much incommoded on this account, it was not possible for us to proceed any farther.

In the short space which we had traversed between the one river and the other, we met only one flock of spring-boc antelopes; but I may say that it filled the whole plain. It was an emigration of which we saw neither the beginning nor the end. This was precisely the season when these animals quit the dry rocky regions of the extremity of Africa to repair towards the north, either to Caffraria, or some other woody country abounding with water. To attempt to number them, or to say that they amounted to twenty, thirty, or even fifty thousand, I should be very far



from the truth; to believe what I here assert one must have seen their passage. We marched in the midst of them, yet they seemed not to be in the least deranged; and they were so tame that I killed three of them without quitting my carriage: it would have been very easy for us, had there been occasion for it, to procure as many as would have supplied provisions for a long time to innumerable armies. In short, the retreat of these antelopes foretold, with more certainty than the *Liege Almanack*, that approaching drought which we had every reason to expect.

Having resumed our journey on the morning of the 6th, in going up the Birds river, which has its source in the snow mountains, an accident, that might have been attended with very serious consequences, stopped us for some time. The clothes of the person who drove one of my carriages having caught hold of some prickles of the mimosa, which he did not observe, while he was endeavouring to place himself in his seat he fell down, and as the waggon advanced the wheel went over his leg. I instantly ran up to him, and I was exceedingly happy to find, after a minute examination, that there was no fracture.

ture. I applied fomentations to the wound myself, afterwards wrapped it up with several bandages soaked in brandy, and left my patient should regret the use to which I applied it, I made him swallow a large bumper of it. For several days he rode in one of my carriages; and this accident was attended with no other effects.

The snow mountains appeared to me like the land of promise, for I found it very difficult to reach them, as one obstacle constantly succeeded another. On the 7th, when I was about to depart, perceiving, when I numbered my cattle, that three of them were missing, my people dispersed themselves on all sides to search for them, and were fortunate enough to succeed; but this operation required so much time, that we could not yoke them till seven in the evening. The days had now attained to their greatest length, but the coolness of the nights was extremely agreeable; and, as I conjectured that we were no more than four or five leagues from Platte river, I intended, when we arrived there, not to advance any farther.

Scarcely had we travelled two or three leagues, when one of my Hottentots in the

rear-guard came galloping towards me full speed, followed by all the relays, which arrived in the greatest disorder. The terror being communicated to the twelve oxen of my Pampoen-kraal waggon, which at that time having no Hottentots to keep them back and manage the two first, as is generally the case, took fright and started on one side, by which accident the pole was broken, and dragging the carriage after them, they rushed into the thickest part of the bushes. Our confusion now became every moment more general, and by the bellowing of the oxen there seemed to be no doubt that we were pursued by lions. We therefore ran to our arms; and whilst some attempted to stop the oxen of the other two carriages, which had suffered themselves to be hurried away like those of the third, and while others were employed in gathering and collecting every thing they could lay their hands on in order to kindle fires, I set out, accompanied by my most expert huntsmen, and went back the same way we had come, to oppose these cruel animals, and give the rest time to make every necessary preparation. The night was not very dark; we were upon a sandy plain,

which enabled us to perceive objects at a certain distance; and when I saw my dogs approach us, and keep close to us in a body, I was fully convinced that there were lions near us. Having suddenly observed two of these animals, which seemed to be waiting for us on a small eminence, we discharged all our pieces together; but this produced no other effect than to make them disappear. We however still advanced in the hopes of killing at least one of them, and, by way of precaution, we continued to discharge our fuses, but we saw nothing more of them. As it was of no avail to persist in pursuing them farther, for they had by this time got to a considerable distance, and as our fires were well kindled, we approached them, while our scattered oxen did the same. They arrived at the spot one after the other, and in a little time we had recovered them all, except those belonging to the Pampoen-kraal waggon, which we heard bellowing at a certain distance. Though they were not far from us, none of my people shewed any inclination to go to their relief; but having at length prevailed upon a few of them to follow me, each of us took a flaming torch in the one

hand, and a fufee in the other, and, protected by my dogs which preceded us, we went in quest of them, and foon reached the place where they were. When we arrived, I found that the piece of the pole which the oxen had carried with them being caught between two trees had ftopped them: they were all in a cluster, and fo embarrassed in the traces, that there were no other means of extricating them but by cutting them to pieces. Three of the oxen were miffing; they had broken their yokes, and we imagined that they were devoured; but when we returned to our fires, I learned that they had juft made their appearance.

Were thefe animals taught by an inftinct merely mechanical that near fires they had nothing to dread from their enemies? Had custom infpired them with this reflection, that for more than the fpace of a year, fpent in travelling along with me, voracious animals, which at firft caufed fo much uneafinefs to them, dared neither to attack them nor come near them? Or did they conceive fo high an idea of man, as to fee in him a powerful protector, and an irrefiftible defender? This fubject I fhall not attempt to explain;

explain; but I know that Nature, which bestows on all animals whatever a sufficient share of intelligence to provide for their own safety, seemed here to have doubled it; and upon this point I have on more than one occasion made remarks, which have always filled me with astonishment and admiration. The morals to be drawn from natural history extend farther than may be imagined. The eye of metaphysics penetrates every day farther and farther; and blind curiosity, which alone formed collections formerly, gives place at present to nobler and more valuable motives. No objects now are too small for the attention of the philosopher; the genius of discovery knows to give importance to every thing; and even insects, considered twenty years ago as minute and mean objects, occupy a conspicuous place in the scale of beings\*.

At break of day I returned to the place where I had fired the preceding evening, and

\* A complete treatise of Ontology will soon appear, worthy of the learned man who first laid the foundations of that grand work, and of the respectable connoisseur who protects and supports by his fortune so noble an undertaking.

I observed the traces of a lion and those of a lioness, which, though equally strong, are always less. Having followed these traces for some time, they conducted me, by a small winding, near to my people, which proved to me that these animals had advanced close to us. We thought it very fortunate that we had kept watch till the appearance of day; and this circumstance was an useful hint to me never to travel during the night in countries with which I was so little acquainted, and which, as I afterwards learned, are the most dangerous to be passed of all Africa.

I had under my carriages some spare poles cut down in the forests of Auteniqua; but as there was no water in the place where we had stopped, and as we had no time to lose in procuring any, I ordered the traces to receive a temporary repair: we spliced therefore the broken pole, in the best manner we could with two pieces of wood, and pursued our journey; but what was our disappointment when we arrived at the Platte river to find it dry! We went up its banks for three quarters of an hour, always tormented with thirst, which still increased, and out of breath;

but

but we at length had the good fortune to arrive at some bogs, containing a little muddy water which the sun had not yet exhaled.

Here we no longer beheld the magnificent country of Caffraria; and we had entirely lost sight of those rich pastures, and those majestic forests, over which our eyes had wandered with so much delight. Rocks piled on each other and parched sands every day succeeded those beautiful views, under forms always more hideous. We found ourselves every where hemmed in by mountains, the sides of which were inclined in a most fantastical manner, while their peaked summits, suspended over our heads, filled the mind with that profound terror, which is the consequence of discouragement, and which awakens the most dismal remembrance. Those of Snew-Berg, at the bottom of which we now were, rose very far above the rest; and winter, seated on their summits, seemed to dispute with the sun the sovereignty of these dismal regions.

As it was my intention to climb and traverse a part of this famous cordillera, though I knew that the Boshmen had, like the lions, established



established their haunts in it, and as I was desirous of securing myself from any surprize by either, I fixed my camp in an open spot, and fortified it in the best manner I could.

Having seen the traces of a rhinoceros, my ancient ardour for hunting was again revived, and I promised a handsome reward to the first of my people who should procure me one of these monstrous animals; but neither of us were so fortunate, for we saw no farther appearance of them. I however unexpectedly fell in with a small flock of eight elks, none of which species I had ever killed, and pursuing them briskly, I shot one dead on the spot. Doctor Sparmann has given a very accurate description of this animal, which the savages name *kana*. It is entirely different from the elk described by Buffon, and is only the largest species of the antelopes of the Cape.

When I returned to my camp, I found that all my hunters, who had dispersed themselves every where throughout the neighbourhood with a view of gaining the prize, were arrived very much discontented and fatigued. One of them having informed me that he had met

met

met with a horde of savage Hottentots, whose kraal was situated just at the foot of the mountains, I resolved to pay them a visit; but I carried with me only three of my best marksmen and the person who had given me this intelligence. Next morning, at the break of day, we had scarcely advanced half way when we met five of these people, who of their own accord were coming towards my camp to see me. They however turned back, and conducted me to their habitation, where their children, as soon as they espied me, ran different ways to conceal themselves, sending forth horrible cries. This general consternation appeared to me very unnatural, and disconcerted all my ideas; for, when I first entered the horde of Haabas and that of several others, the women and the children had indeed retired, but by their behaviour they shewed neither fear nor apprehension. Being very desirous to discover the cause of this terror, I was informed that these people had been established only a short while in the place where I saw them; that in Camdebo, their own country, they had experienced a thousand persecutions from the planters; that,

that, animated with the most inveterate and sanguinary hatred against the whites, they endeavoured to inspire their children with the same detestation of them, in order that it might increase with their years; and that they were not sorry to have heard them repeat, in this rencontre, the catechism of vengeance.

With regard to the men, they smiled on my approach, and seemed not at all astonished to see me; for they had been informed the preceding evening that I intended to pay them a visit. Their horde amounted only to about an hundred, or an hundred and twenty people; and their flocks, which I met in going towards them, and which consisted of an hundred horned cattle, and perhaps twice that number of sheep, plainly shewed that they were far from being wealthy: but I was more fully convinced that this was the case when I saw these poor wretches employed in drying locusts upon hard mats, and cutting off their legs and their wings. As their collection of this provision was in the highest state of fermentation, I was obliged to take the windward side of them,

them, in order to avoid the infectious exhalations which every now and then proceeded from it.

Not quite six months before these poor Hottentots had taken shelter in this place, to avoid the cruelties committed by the planters; but, without knowing it, they had exposed themselves to atrocities of another kind. Besides the dangerous Boshmen, who might every moment discover them, they had to defend themselves also against ferocious animals, and particularly wild dogs, which occasioned great ravage among their flocks. Having given them some advice respecting their safety, and made them a few presents, I offered to purchase some sheep from them, which they promised to bring next morning. As I was preparing to take leave of them, I was obliged to enter one of their huts, to shelter myself from a dreadful storm which suddenly came upon us, and which continued full three hours, during which I was almost inundated. The whole kraal was in danger of being swept entirely away; many of the huts were violently shaken; the torrents hurried before them sand and earth, which they washed down in their course,  
and

and trees torn up by the roots ; but as the place which I occupied was better secured, I beheld with pleasure, though up to the knees in water, the cascades and cataracts that fell with a horrid noise from the summits of the mountains, and which, dashing against each other in their fall, reached the plains in a thousand streams, and covered them with vapour and foam. The banks of the Platte river, which was only a few paces from me, having in a moment disappeared, I gave the first body of water time to subside ; but being under great uneasiness concerning my camp, I took advantage of the earliest interval which the rain gave us, and set out to return. Whilst I was confined in this hut, I suffered much from a bag of locusts, which, though already dry, emitted a most foetid and disgusting smell. The rain continued with great fury during the whole night, and the day following the inundation increased so much, that these Hottentots were not able to visit my camp as they had promised.

We now entertained little dread of being in want of water ; but we made no use of that of the river, because it was both brackish and muddy : we preferred having recourse

to the ponds, which being undisturbed, the sand and the mud had subsided at leisure.

The next day, as the weather was much calmer, about twenty men and a few women brought me four sheep, and an old cow which was only fit for the knife. These people did not seem to be remarkably fond of my glass beads: their women, indeed, were loaded with them. They shewed much more avidity for tobacco; and as I could procure a supply of this part of my provision with the greatest ease when I entered the colonies, I was not sparing of it. My liberality on this occasion won their hearts, and they brought me eleven sheep more, for which I paid them very generously.

Knowing that I was about to traverse a very dry and barren country, I preserved these different acquisitions as a valuable resource in case of necessity.

One day, while I had a great many of these strangers with me, one of the keepers of my flocks came to inform me, that several of the Boshmen, coming down from the mountains, had approached him and his companions, but that they had kept them in awe by a few discharges of their fuses.

Upon this intelligence, Klaas and I got on horseback, and, followed by four other chafseurs, set out to pursue them. We indeed soon discovered thirteen of these plunderers; but the rapidity of our course, and our determined and resolute appearance, soon put them to flight. We however galloped towards them full speed, and made some of our balls whiz around their ears; but we could not get near enough to take proper aim at them. I considered it as sufficient for me, and it tended not a little to my safety, that we had struck them with some terror. We saw them all enter the mountains by different paths, and they soon disappeared entirely. I greatly admired the agility with which they climbed the steepest rocks with the nimbleness of monkeys; but I did not choose to follow them farther; for it would have been highly imprudent to attempt to attack them in their strong holds, and their impenetrable recesses.

These people would not assuredly have missed us. They were all perfectly naked; and I judged, by the traces of their feet, that they wore sandals. This slight alarm was of the greatest utility: it served to render

der us more suspicious; and on this account I doubled our guards, and Swanepoel and I went the rounds alternately; while my faithful Klaas, at the head of a small detachment, visited the valley and its environs. From time to time they fired their fuses, which signals my herdsman were obliged to answer; and by these means I was assured that they had not fallen asleep, and that they discharged their duty with fidelity.

This precaution, which I observed for the sake of good order, and that I might have nothing to reproach myself with in our present circumstances, was of very little utility in other respects. A Hottentot dreads a Boshman much more than a lion: this salutary fear kept all mine on the watch, and even in the most open places, which exposed them to excruciating torment from thirst; for the heat had now become almost insupportable. I myself was exposed to the same inconvenience as much as they, but this did not make me abandon my hunting excursions. It was a matter of indifference to me whether I walked or stood still: my tent was so intolerably hot that I could not re-



main in it; but, upon such occasions, my beard well soaked afforded me considerable relief: I derived some advantage also from the form of my hat, which I moistened in the like manner. In these critical moments, when oppressed by an unquenchable thirst, having remarked that the quantity of water I drank served only to inflame me the more, I resolved to drink in future like the dogs, that is to say, to lap. This strange method gave me wonderful ease, for a very little water was then sufficient to allay my thirst, and I no longer feared to be incommoded by it.

As long as we remained on the banks of the Platte river we were not much disturbed by lions. Our artillery, which thundered on every side during the day, kept them at a distance, though we heard them roaring every night; but, except once, they never ventured so near us as to occasion any alarm. The panthers also, at the rising and setting of the sun, gave us signs of their being on the banks of the river; but they kept at a respectable distance. In the middle of the night they advanced much nearer to us, but we were constantly warned of their approach

by our dogs, and the next morning we could judge by their traces how far they had exposed themselves. Necessity alone renders all these species of carnivorous animals bold, for they naturally dread the sight of man; and I am of opinion, that the dangers to be apprehended from their being in the neighbourhood have been too much exaggerated. The only two kinds of antelopes found here are not sufficient to satisfy their voracity; they choose rather to follow those numerous hordes who travel from one canton to another; and they have then an opportunity of selecting such food as may be most agreeable to them, and of making a dreadful slaughter among their flocks.

My neighbours seeing me determined to ascend the snow mountains, advised me to be upon my guard, and not to remain long in them, as the Boshmen were at this time in great force. I had no intention of carrying my whole caravan thither, for this foolish project would not have been practicable; but as I was desirous of examining a few of their summits, and of traversing them only in the day time with my chasseurs, I advanced as near to the bottom of them as I

possibly could, and established my camp at the distance of three hundred paces from the savage horde. I expected to find on the summit, as I had been told, a considerable volcano, that emitted smoke and flames; but I saw nothing that had any resemblance to such a phenomenon. By the assistance of my spy-glass, I discovered an immense extent of country stretched out towards the north, and bounded only by the horizon; and on the most elevated peaks and the plain spaces pyramids of flints and sand, exactly like those found upon downs. I endeavoured, but in vain, to discover some shells; I observed no fragments or remains that had the least affinity to any marine production. My principal attention was directed to birds; and I had the good fortune to discover and kill some very uncommon, particularly a very beautiful species of widow bird\*, that concealed itself in the long grass with which these high mountains were almost every where covered.

\* The *Emberiza Paradisea* of Linnæus; the *Passer Indicus* of Ray, Willoughby, and Johnston; and the *long-tailed red throat* of Edwards. T.

In all my excursions, which always ended at sun-set, I never saw any of the Boshmen but once. They were only three in number, and were traversing the back part of a mountain opposite to that on which I was; but they did not think proper to attack us. We indeed carried nothing with us that could tempt them; and these three vagabonds had perhaps been among those to whom I had so recently given chase, and in all probability remembered the terror into which I had thrown them. These infamous wretches do not form, as has been falsely supposed, a particular nation; nor are they a people who have had their origin in those places where they are now found. Boshmen is a name composed of two Dutch words, which signify *bush-men* or *men of the woods*: and it is under this appellation that the inhabitants of the Cape, and all the Dutch in general, whether in Africa or America, distinguish those malefactors or assassins who desert from the colonies in order to escape punishment. In a word, they are what in the French West-India islands are called *Marroon Negroes*. These Boshmen, therefore, far from being a distinct species, as has been even

lately asserted, are only a promiscuous assemblage of mulattoes, negroes, and mestizos, of every species, and sometimes of Hottentots and Bastards; who all differing in colour, resemble each other in nothing but in villainy. They are real land pirates, who live under a chief, without laws and without discipline; abandoned to the utmost misery and despair; base deserters, who have no other resources to procure them a subsistence but plundering and crimes. They retire to the steepest rocks, and the most inaccessible caverns, and there they pass their lives. From these elevated places they command an extensive prospect over the surrounding plains, lie in wait for the unwary traveller and the scattered flocks, pour down upon them with the velocity of an arrow, and suddenly falling upon the inhabitants and their cattle, slaughter them without distinction. Loaded with booty, and whatever they can carry with them, they then repair to their gloomy caves, which they never quit, till, like the lions, hunger again impels them to fresh massacres. But as treachery always marches with a trembling step, and as the presence of one resolute person is sufficient to overawe

whole

whole troops of these banditti, they carefully shun those plantations where they are certain that the owners themselves reside. Artifice and cunning, the usual resources of timid souls, are the only means which they employ, and the only guides that accompany them in their expeditions. In places where the prints of their feet, too strongly impressed, might alarm the inhabitants, and rouse them to pursuit, they disguise them by a wonderful address, to which our plunderers in Europe, more impetuous or less patient, never think of having recourse: they always march backwards if they are not shod; but if they wear sandals, they tie them to the foot in such a manner that the heel corresponds with the toes. When they carry off a considerable flock of living animals, they distribute them, under the care of several of their gang, into small bodies, making them pursue different routes; and by these means, if they are chased, they always secure the greater part of their plunder.

Another nation, entirely different from that of the Hottentots, is confounded also under the name of Boshmen. Though these people in their language use the same clappings

pings as the Hottentots, they have however a particular pronounciation and expreffions peculiar to themfelves. In fome cantons they are called *Chineefe Hottentot*, Chinefe Hottentots, becaufe their colour approaches near to that of the Chinefe found at the Cape; and, like them, they are of a fmall ftature. On account of the affinity of their language, I confider thefe people, as well as the great and leffer Nimiquas, of whom I fhall have occafion foon to fpeak, as a particular race of Hottentots; and though the planters confound the former under the general denomination of Boshmen, it is nevertheless true that the favages of the defart, who have no communication with the Dutch fettlements, know them only under the name of *Houfwaana*.

This nation, whatever name may be given it, inhabited formerly the Camdebo, the Bocke-Veld, and the Rugge-Veld; but the ufurpations of the whites, whose victims they have been like the other favages, compelled them to take flight, and to feek fhelter in very remote places. At prefent they inhabit that vaft country comprehended between Caf-  
fraria and the great Nimiqua land; and of

all those people, whom the avarice of the Europeans has treated with cruelty, there are none who preserve a stronger remembrance of the injuries they here sustained, or who hold the name of the whites in greater detestation. They will never forget the perfidies of the planters, and the infamous return made to them for the signal services which they have rendered upon more than a hundred occasions. Their resentment is so violent, that they have always the dreadful word *vengeance* in their mouths, and an opportunity of giving vent to it happens always too late, though they are continually watching for it. I propose to give some farther account of these Houfwaana when, passing under the tropic, I come to visit their hordes.

One evening, after retiring to my tent, having begun to consign to my journal the events of the day, while all my people seated around a fire were smoking their pipes, my curiosity was greatly roused by loud peals of laughter, which struck my ears; and I overheard one of my huntsmen relating to the rest a discovery, which so much the more excited their mirth, as it afforded them great matter of surprise, and as they took it for a  
tale



tale merely invented on purpose by my Hottentot humorist. The latter, however, who endeavoured to persuade them of the truth of it, told them, that as soon as I knew it I would not rest satisfied until I should be convinced by my own eyes. Their immoderate laughter was then renewed with louder bursts than ever: they all spoke at the same time, and seemed very impatient that the usual hour of my drinking tea was not yet arrived. Having called Klaas, I learned from him that Jan, one of my chasseurs, assured him, that he had discovered, after dinner, in the horde, a Hottentot woman, who had that peculiar conformation which I always considered as a fable, because I had never seen it in any of the countries through which I passed, notwithstanding all my enquiry and researches, though one of my people had before asserted the same fact, and though my whole troop had some knowledge of it by hearsay, and by a tradition pretty generally diffused. He indeed related to me, in the minutest manner, and with all the energy, or rather ingenuity, of his language, what the most unexpected accident had permitted him to examine at his leisure, and in the completest manner.

Being

Being very desirous of clearing up as soon as possible this very interesting point of civil as well as of natural history, which I had more than once found in different books of travels and in romances, such as those of John Struys, I repaired next morning to the neighbouring horde, together with my Hottentot, who immediately distinguished the woman whose conformation had so much astonished him. When she was pointed out to me, I found her to be a married woman, who had several children, and who was already pretty far advanced in years. I made her several presents, under various pretences, in order to prepossess her in my favour, and to gain her esteem; and, in a word, to prevail upon her to permit me to satisfy my curiosity. I had not to deal here with those impudent and dissolute Hottentot women of the colonies, always too much disposed to gratify, and even to anticipate, the desires of the white men and their scandalous fantasies. Here I had reason to expect great difficulties, for I knew that savage women almost always refuse that to curiosity which they grant to love—a delicate distinction, which people would not expect to find in a desert, when they carry thither

ther with them their prejudices, and all the bias of pride.

Ye worthy and provident mothers, who may chance to read this work, you will never be induced to believe that the chaste children, whom you educate with the hopes of seeing them attain to your virtues, would be as safe from corruption and the pernicious effects of bad example amidst the savages of Africa, as in the bosom of those profound and silent retreats where wisdom, as we are told, watches over innocence, and removes from it whatever might tend to corrupt it, or give offence to its sight: accuse not Nature, and do not boast too much of your precepts and grand institutions; you owe them entirely to a contempt of her laws.

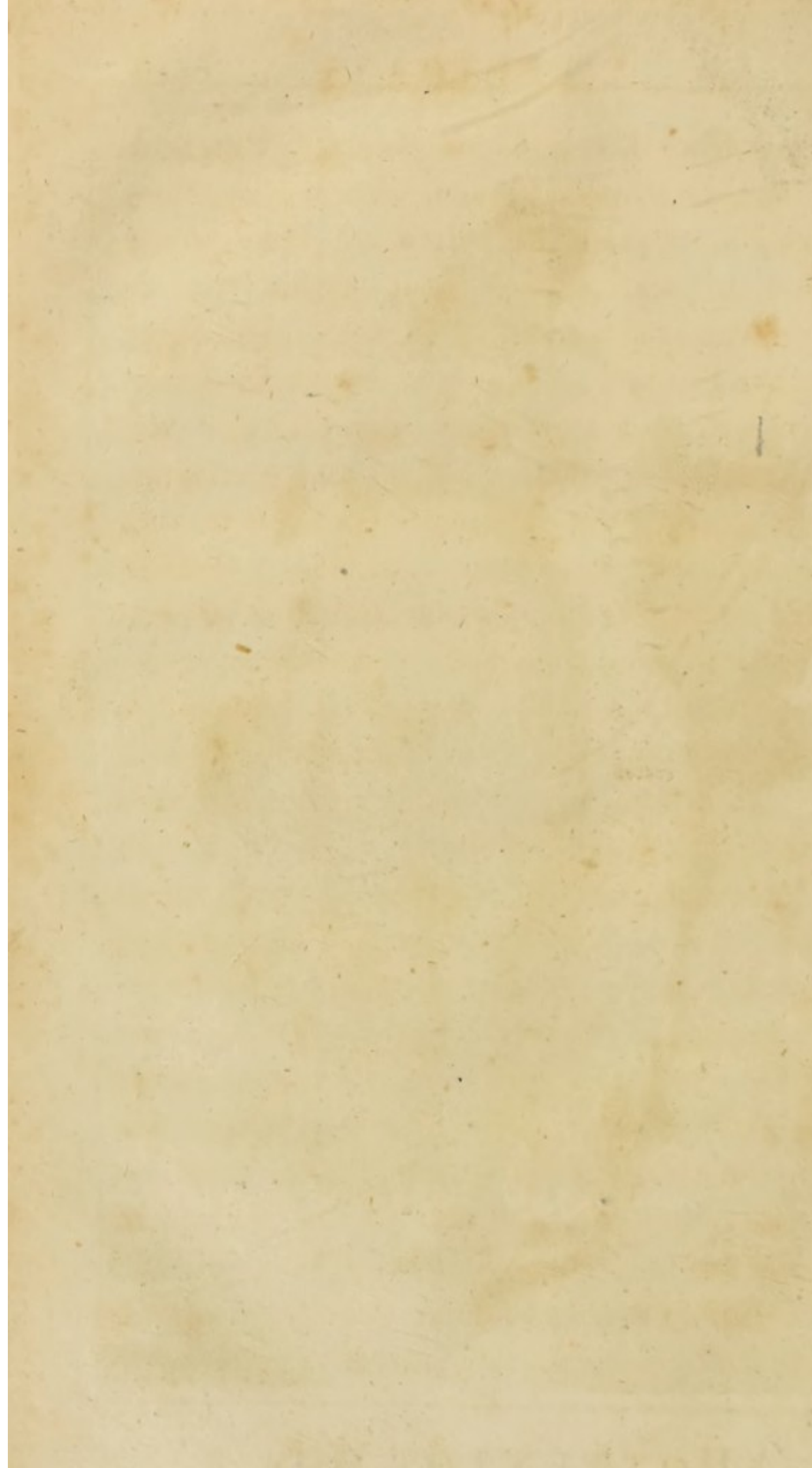
To the honour of these people I must here assert, and I ought to take every opportunity of doing so, that all my stratagems, and all my entreaties to obtain what I desired would have proved fruitless, had it not been for the assistance of one of my people, and assurances, twenty times repeated, to persuade this woman that I was a curious stranger, of a race very distinct, and who lived very remote

mote



Cook Sc

A HOTTENTOT WOMAN.



mote from hers ; that Gonaqua, Caffre, and other Hottentot women, had readily consented to grant me the same indulgence ; and, in short, that I would detain her no longer than a moment in that humiliating posture : some of the men also of the horde supported my arguments, and pleaded in my favour. Confused, abashed, and trembling, she covered her face with both her hands, suffered her apron to be untied, and permitted me to contemplate at leisure what my readers will see themselves in the exact representation which I drew of it, and which forms the seventh plate of this volume.

To destroy an opinion, generally received, that nature has exclusively bestowed on the Hottentot women a natural apron, which serves to conceal the marks of their sex, a modern author asserts, that this singularity is nothing else but a prolongation of the nymphæ ; and this idea has, very improperly, been adopted by many. He represents this apron almost as an infirmity, occasioned either by old age, the heat of the climate, an inactive life, or the use of greasy unctions, &c. I should never have done, were I to mention all the objections that naturally arise to de-

stroy

stroy this opinion; but I cannot omit one which must instantly occur to the mind, and which the reader no doubt has made as well as I. Since the heat of the climate, an inactive life, and the use of grease, influence almost in the same degree all those people who inhabit the southern extremity of Africa, why should a few particular hordes only be subject to this infirmity? It is well known at the Cape, and in the colonies, that nothing of the kind happens among the Hottentot women, whatever may be their conduct, however they may live, and to whatever dangers they may be exposed. But let us not rack our imaginations with this singularity, which as it is uncommon, has nothing extraordinary in it; and let us not seek to explain, as a phenomenon, what is only the effect of fashion and caprice. Yes, reader, this celebrated apron is only a fashion, an affair of taste, I will not say depraved, for signs of modesty can never constitute the essence of it; but original, extravagant, perhaps absurd, and such, that the sight of it only is sufficient to banish from the mind of the most dissipated libertine every idea of amorous enjoyment, and de-  
ceiving,

ceiving, in a new and too plain manner, the refinement of his wants, to make the most unbridled passion give place to laughter that could scarcely be suppressed. I wish to be decent, but I must at the same time pay proper regard to truth. I cannot think of omitting in my work these circumstances of my travels; and since my female Hottentot consented to improve my knowledge at the expence of her modesty, too much reserve on my part might be accounted childish bashfulness: scrupulous nicety is improper on a subject to which nature has attached no shame.

This natural apron is indeed nothing else, as the above author has said, than a prolongation of the nymphæ, or the large lips of the private parts of a woman. They may hang down about nine inches, more or less, according to the age of the person, or the assiduous care which is bestowed on this singular decoration. I saw a young girl of fifteen, in whom these parts were already four inches in length. Until they attain to that size, they are made to distend by friction, and by stretching them; but the remaining part of the process is performed by weights sus-



pended from them. I have already said that this custom proceeds from a peculiar taste, a very uncommon caprice of fashion, and a refinement of coquetry. In the horde, in which I then was, only four women, and the young girl already mentioned, were in this ridiculous situation. Whoever has read *Dionis* will readily comprehend how easily this operation may be performed; as for my part, I see nothing wonderful in it but the whimsicalness of the invention. Formerly, perhaps, whole hordes of savages, distinguished by this particularity, were to be met with even in those parts which at present belong to the colonies, and this in all probability has given birth to those errors which have been propagated on this subject; but the dispersion of a people soon destroys their ancient usages. This one is practised only in certain parts remote from one another, and by a few individuals attached by tradition to ancient manners, and who consider it as a merit still to observe them with the most scrupulous minuteness.

When I had finished my observations, and traversed, as far as the precautions necessary to be taken would permit, different chains  
and

and the most beautiful spots of the snow mountains, I began to think of quitting this dismal country altogether. My people strongly solicited me to conduct them to Carouw, and to make haste to cross it before the excessive heat had entirely dried up the small quantity of stagnant water that we might possibly find in it, and lest we should not meet with pastures sufficient for our oxen, which for a long time had suffered greatly from the intenseness of the season. Being therefore as much pressed by the circumstances of the moment as desirous of returning to the Cape, and no longer finding in my excursions the same charms and the same amusements as before, either that fatigue had cooled my ardour, or that other projects, and powerful remembrance, had resumed over my imagination that empire which a view of the greatest novelties had destroyed, I set out on the 2d of February, and directed my course towards the south-west. A part of the horde accompanied us three leagues, to assist us in crossing the river *Jubers*, which they concluded to be greatly swelled by the excessive rains. When we reached it we began to think of constructing rafts; but our

conductors, who knew of a commodious ford a quarter of a league lower, saved us this useless labour, which would have consumed much time. Having accompanied them to reconnoitre the ford which they mentioned, I judged, after trying the depth of it with my horse, that, by only elevating eight or ten inches, but with precaution, the boxes and lading of my three carriages by means of branches and brush-wood, we might be able to pass without sustaining any damage; we accordingly accomplished this business with equal dexterity and success. Our companions, indeed, were of great service to us upon this occasion; they crossed the river, and spent the night with us, in order to assist us next morning to load our carriages again, and to arrange our effects. I rewarded them generously for what they had done, and we then took leave of each other.

In the canton into which I was now entering, I found a prodigious number of those green and golden cuckoos, of which I have already spoken, and several new species that I added to my collection. The same day I fell in with another river, the name of which I did not know; but I gave it that of my respectable

spectable friend Mr. Boers. The dry plains of Carouw begin in this place; and I observed that this ungrateful soil, or rather these sands, as far as the eye could reach, were covered with coarse plants and weeds: on another side rocks no less barren exhibited every where to the saddened eye the picture of desolation and death. We saw only small tufts of grass, which seemed to spring up with reluctance, for the preservation of our flocks.

On the 4th a march of five hours conducted us to the river Voogel, which discharges itself into that of Sondag, which we had crossed not long before near its mouth, and which we were soon to have a view of again not far from its source. Our sufferings increased every day with the heat, and travelling became very laborious to us. I however still amused myself in my leisure hours with hunting; and I killed, in the course of my journey, another French field-duck of a new species. The following day we reached the river Sondag at a very early hour. The aspect of this spot, much less dismal, served at least to revive my hopes: superb avenues of mimosas, watered by the river, presented every where around us magnificent views; and as they

were in full blossom, they perfumed the surrounding air with their sweet and delicious odour. Birds of a thousand species, and most beautiful insects, detained me here till the 8th; when having observed that, notwithstanding the large supply of pins which I had carried with me from the Cape, they began to run short, it came into my head to replace them by the small prickles of the mimosa, which answered the same purpose.

Leaving the Sondag behind me, I met sixteen Hottentots with their arms and baggage on the banks of the *Swart-Rivier*, or Black River. They had left Camdebo, to join, at the bottom of the snow mountains, the horde which we had left there; and I learned from them that they had been compelled to this emigration by formidable troops of Boshmen, who were carrying fire and sword through Camdebo, and burning the plantations, in order to carry away the ammunition, arms, and whole riches of the inhabitants. Nothing could disconcert me more than this intelligence, equally ungracious and unexpected; for it raised the alarm in every breast, and revived our former terrors. Persuaded that any farther explanation would only disturb the  
imagination

imaginations of my timid Hottentots still more, I immediately ordered them all to follow me. They had already begun to speak of returning the same way we had come, and I looked forward to the moment when my authority was about to be at an end; but the bravest of my people, who did not hesitate to accompany me, induced all the rest to imitate their example. Having observed that Slinger, who gave me so much cause to complain of his conduct at Koks-Kraal, shewed here the greatest resistance, and that even this day he performed his service in a very suspicious manner, I determined, for the first time, to make an example of him, to intimidate those dastardly companions whom he had seduced. In the evening, when I arrived at the river Camdebo, which takes its name from the country it traverses, I signified to him that he should instantly quit my caravan; reproaching him at the same time with having been the first promoter of that fear and consternation, which had prevented all my people from following me into Caffraria, and with having obliged me by his culpable resistance to abandon the noblest part of my projects, for want of strength, courage, and assistance, to enable

me to prosecute it, and bring it to a conclusion. I then paid him what wages were due; made him deliver up his effects and some provisions, and threatened to pursue him as I would do a wild beast, should he ever again appear in my presence. He was so much struck and abashed by this apostrophe, and the vehemence with which I pronounced these last words, that he snatched up his wallet and retired with precipitation. My people conjectured that he would make for the nearest plantation, or join the Hottentots whom we had met in the morning; and I entertained a notion that he would have offered some excuse for his conduct, or that some of his companions would have interceded for him; but I was extremely glad that he pursued another course. This severity proved of the greatest service to me, and, during the rest of my journey, was attended with all that effect which I expected.

I quitted the river Camdebo on the 9th of February, at which time several of my oxen being attacked by the *klauw-sikte*, they found the journey very laborious. As ease and refreshments were the only remedies that could speedily restore them to their former state, I chose

chose out, upon one of the windings made by the river, among the mimosas, a commodious lawn, where I established my camp, with an intention of remaining there some days. I had however no need to bid my people be upon their guard, for they were too much afraid of the Boshmen to fail in their duty, or to relax in their precaution. We were now precisely in that canton, in which these plunderers, as we had been told, were spreading terror and consternation. Our provisions beginning to grow short, and as we no longer found large game, I resolved to procure some if possible, in order that I might salt it; and on this account I undertook a few hunting excursions, which carried me to a greater or less distance from my camp. One day, having pursued very closely an antelope-elk, I wandered to a considerable distance with one of my best shooters, who followed me; and at the corner of a thick grove of mimosas we suddenly espied a Hottentot, who was searching for the nymphæ of ants, which is a favourite food among these savages. No sooner had he seen us, than, snatching up his bow and quiver with great precipitation, he betook himself to flight; but giving full scope to my horse, I

soon



soon overtook him. By the evident signs which he exhibited of terror and embarrassment, I concluded that he was a Boshman. His life was in my hands: in these desarts I could have exercised my right of sovereignty, and might have punished him, had I been cruel, for all the crimes of his countrymen and for the inexcusable fault of belonging to these plunderers; but hitherto I had no cause to complain of these people, and besides I was desirous of profiting by this rencounter, and of procuring new information: a planter however would have acted in a quite different manner. By my looks he plainly discovered that I had no intention of doing him any hurt; and, after some questions relating to the situation in which we respectively were, and which he could not answer without trembling, he began to resume his courage, and to have some confidence in me. As I complained to him of the scarcity of game in the places which I had traversed, he informed where I would be certain of finding what I wanted. I ordered my Hottentot, who had now overtaken me, to make him a present of a part of his tobacco; and, after wishing him more moderation and probity, I turned my horse round, and con-

tinued my excursion. Scarcely however had I proceeded fifty paces, when my hunter, who had remained with him a few minutes to light his pipe, and put an end to his conversation, called out to me with a loud voice. Terrified by his bawling, I instantly returned, and, when I came up to him, I found that he was attacked by the treacherous Boshman, who, with an arrow in his hand, was attempting to wound him in the head. Seeing the visage of my poor Hottentot already covered over with blood, in a transport of rage I leaped from my horse, and seizing my fusée and discharging it at his breast, the traitor was stunned and instantly dropped, while my Hottentot in the excess of his fury collected his arms, and put an end to the life of his formidable adversary by treading on him with his feet. Alarmed at his wound, he expected every moment to perish by the effect of the poison; for the rascal had discharged an arrow at him the moment they had separated. The wound, which was exactly above the nose, appeared to me more dangerous on that account, but luckily it was very slight; he had been only touched by the edge of the iron head, which is never poisoned. Having washed the wound

with

with urine, I comforted him in the best manner I could, persuaded that it was not mortal; and as I always carried about me a phial of volatile alkali, which Mr. Percheron, the French agent, gave me when I quitted the Cape, in order that I might dissipate even every appearance of poison, I tore off some pieces from my shirt, and dipping them in the alkali, applied them to the part affected; but these precautions of my tender friendship, instead of elevating the spirits of the unfortunate Hottentot, made him persist in attributing the severe pains occasioned by the caustic to the effects of the poison: as for me, what I wondered at most, and what I considered as the influence of my happy star, was that he had not been killed on the spot; had that been the case, the assassin, armed with a fusée which he might have taken from him, would not have failed to lie in wait for me in the nearest turning and to have consigned me to the same fate. Taking up the villain's bow and quiver, and leaving his body dreadfully mangled, I hastened to return to my camp. This adventure soon spread the alarm throughout the country; and my Hottentot, persuaded that he would not live till morning, still added to the

the

the consternation of my people. It would have been in vain for me to attempt to allay their terrors; they all entertained the same idea as my patient, and imagined that he could not live the night through; but it passed away without the appearance of any alarming symptoms; and the pain having abated, he began to be convinced that he would escape at the expence of being well frightened. When he awoke, his companions, astonished to see him alive, recovered the use of their speech, and boasted in a thousand different ways, as is commonly the case when danger is over. They judged, above all, that the death of the assassin was the most fortunate circumstance for us in this adventure; for had this man escaped and followed us through the thickets and winding ways, he would have discovered our retreat. He would not then have failed to give notice to the rest of the Boshmen, who, in a numerous body, would have suddenly fallen upon us and massacred us without mercy. The various conjectures of my Hottentots, and their endless prattling, amused me much, and proved not at all uninteresting. I concluded from it that they would at length become familiarized with danger; and I was exceedingly glad that they had  
seen

seen it so near; for I knew no obstacle that could be more fatal to my designs than imaginary terrors.

The day following we departed, and while we were marching along I amused myself with shooting, either on one side or the other as the weather was remarkably favourable. Having started a female ostrich, when I went up to the nest, the largest I had ever seen, I found in it thirty-eight eggs in a heap, and thirteen more distributed at some distance each in a small cavity. They appeared to be all unequal in size; and when I examined them more closely, I perceived nine much smaller than the rest: on this discovery I ordered my people to halt, and to unyoke the oxen at the distance of a quarter of a league from the nest, whilst I went to conceal myself in a thicket, which was within a gun-shot of the spot, and from which I could have a full view of the animal if it returned. After a short interval, the female arrived and squatted down upon the eggs, and, during the rest of the time that I continued in the bush, three more joined her. They relieved each other by turns, one only remaining a quarter of an hour on the nest, while one of the new comers

fat by her side. This made me imagine that sometimes, and perhaps when the nights are rainy or cold, two or more unite together to cover the eggs the better. When the sun was nearly about to set, a male arrived, and approached the nest in order to place himself on it; for the males sit as well as the females. As I had now the opportunity I wished for, I discharged my piece and killed him on the spot: upon which the rest, frightened by the noise of the report, started up, and in their confusion broke several of the eggs. On going up to the nest, I perceived with much regret, that the young had been just ready to burst the shell, for they were entirely covered with down. The male which I killed had not one beautiful white feather; they were all already stripped, and become quite dirty. I however picked out such of the black ones as appeared to be most entire, and quitting the place, I detached several of my Hottentots to search for the thirteen eggs which were scattered around the nest, strictly enjoining them not to touch the rest. Being desirous to know whether the females would return in the night-time, I repaired to the nest at day-break; but I found every thing swept away from the  
place,

place, except a few fragments of shells lying here and there, which sufficiently shewed that we had furnished an excellent repast to some jackals, or even hyænas.

This peculiarity respecting the female ostrich, which unites with several others for incubation in the same nest, is the more worthy to engage the attention of the naturalist, as, not being a general rule, it proves that certain circumstances may sometimes determine the actions of these animals, and modify their sensations, which would tend to exalt their instinct, by giving them a more sagacious foresight than is generally allowed them. Is it not probable that these animals associate together in order that they may be stronger and better able to defend their offspring? I shall have occasion to enter more at large on this subject, in the description of the ostrich which I intend to give hereafter. I flatter myself that the public will read with pleasure plain and authentic relations, which will contain rather a view of the manners and habits of these animals than tiresome details, which are often only repetitions concerning the number of their feathers, their proportions, and the exact dimensions of all their parts,

parts. Ridiculous enumerations! which shew as little the variety of the species, as the difference of their characters,

In returning from the nest to our camp, my dogs started a hare, and set out in pursuit of it; upon which I galloped after them, and saw it take shelter in the cavities of a small barrow, which happened to be in the way. After some search I at length discovered the precise place of its retreat; and having stopped up the mouth of the hole it had entered, I pulled down the stones and the gravel which composed this small eminence; but I could scarcely describe my astonishment when I perceived that it was a Hottentot tomb. I however found the hare squatted down among some bones, and seizing it alive I carried it along with me. My dogs being engaged elsewhere, in a spot where they could not observe me, through an emotion of generosity, and as if disdainingly to put this feeble animal to death except with the arms I usually employed in hunting, I set it at liberty. This action was ascribed by my people to a motive which raised me very high in their esteem, and I was extremely cautious not to undeceive them. They believed, and with the utmost satisfaction, that I had suffered



this animal to escape, not because I considered it as of little value, but because I respected the asylum of the dead, and was desirous of rendering this natural homage to the tomb of one of their countrymen. Having covered the bones with the the same gravel which I had taken from them, we pursued another route; and during this interval some more of my hunters had killed four gnous, the salting of which employed us three whole days.

On the 16th I arrived at a plantation belonging to two brothers who were free negroes, one of whom was married to a young mulatto woman. These worthy people received me with the utmost joy, and offered me the free use of every thing they possessed. But, shall I say it? my heart, agitated by a thousand different sensations, received with indifference their caresses and their tender solicitude. I found in them almost the same manners and the same customs as those common in the civilized world. I had now returned to society, and I again beheld fields, utensils, possessions, established order, masters; in a word, I was on a plantation. So much indulgence became a burden to me; an involuntary impulse hurried me from this retreat;

treat ; I often walked about, with my eyes wandering from one side to another, as if to discover my lost way ; I oppressed the house with complaints, and, if I may use the expression, surrounded it with my sighs. All was now fled ; the torrents, mountains, majestic forests, impracticable roads, hordes of savages and their delightful huts, all were vanished. Every thing seemed to excite my regret, even to ferocious animals ; which for the moment, I imagined entertained sentiments of friendship and benevolence towards me. I do not know whether these whimsical ideas are common to other men ; but the more I reflect on them, the more I am convinced that they belong to nature. Powerful charm of liberty ! invincible force, which I shall carry with me to the grave ! Thou transformedst into pleasures the most laborious fatigues, into amusements the greatest dangers, into delightful spectacles the most dismal objects ; and thou strewedst my paths with the flowers of felicity and repose, at a season and age when destiny seemed to impel me to search for them elsewhere. With these two negroes I eat bread for the first time during the space of a year, but I had almost forgot the taste of it. Though I at first pro-

posed to stop here only one day, I remained three days. We had still a great extent of country to traverse, some enormous mountains to cross, and great difficulties to encounter in the desarts of Camdebo ; the awful aspect of which every where present, instead of the verdure and natural gardens of the Pampoen-Kraal, nothing but hideous rocks, sands, and flints, sometimes grey, sometimes reddish, and sometimes of a yellow colour. As I approached towards the plantations danger decreased, and still adhering to my ideas, I flattered myself with the hope of more enjoyments. If I except therefore the places where I had just halted, I followed my plan with equal constancy, when I returned and when I departed; but I embraced the opportunity which chance had afforded me, by falling in with these two brothers, to procure provisions for the subsistence of my people, and I took precautions accordingly. They supplied me with a large quantity of biscuit ; and I made a grateful return for this essential service, by giving them in exchange powder, shot, and gun-flints ; all valuable articles, which they had long been in want of, though it is indispensably necessary that a plantation should always be provided with

them, either to defend the cattle or repel the Boshmen. For so great a favour, they would have readily granted me whatever I required.

On the 19th I set out, at four in the afternoon; but the sun, more ardent than ever, scorched us most dreadfully for two days. Wandering about, without being able to find a single drop of water, we had recourse to some jars, which I had ordered to be filled at the house of the negro brothers; but we were obliged to confine ourselves to a certain allowance, as had several times been the case before.

On the 21st, after crossing the bed of the Kriga, which was dry, and which we had crossed the preceding evening, I fell in with two inhabitants of Camdebo, who were returning from the Cape, and pursuing their way to their own residence. As I had not heard from my friends at the town for above a year, I was happy to learn that, by the assistance of France, the Cape had been protected from an invasion by the English, and that the colony was still in the hands of the Dutch; but the pleasure I received from this intelligence was soon effaced by hearing of the indisposition of my benefactor, whom these travellers said they had left in a very critical situation at the

warm baths, which are the last resource of sick people in Africa. This information threw a gloom over my mind, and embittered the remainder of my journey.

Eagerly desirous of seeing a friend who had many claims on my friendship, I wished to hasten my journey; but the fear of finding him in a languishing condition corrupted the pleasure which I enjoyed by anticipation. These two planters forewarned me that I would suffer much by the way, on account of the drought and want of water; and that, as I carried a great number of cattle along with me, I could hope for no resources but in the stormy rains which might come on: that, besides these inconveniences, the country was infested by the Boshmen; and that they had even plundered them of thirty-two oxen, and massacred their herdsmen, at the passage of the Black River. This last part of their intelligence did not prevent me from proceeding; for, since the example of severity which I had been forced to give, my people never shewed any signs of timidity, and I believe that along with me they would have been capable of braving all the banditti of Camdebo. I was however unwilling to expose them rashly: it

was

was impossible for me to march in the night-time, for this would have deprived me of every advantage ; and the greater part of my oxen were rendered unfit for service by a disease in their hoofs ; so that not being able to relieve those that were in a sound condition, I made them set out before us with a strong guard, in order that we might not be retarded in our march.

When I arrived in this manner at *Kriga-Fontyn*, or the Fountain of Kriga, my oxen found as much water as they had occasion for ; but it was so brackish, that the Hottentots who drank of it were seized with colics and violent diarrhœas. As I was sounding the foil, and examining whether this water might not cause disorders still more dangerous, I was greatly surpris'd to observe Kees, who was always the first every where, draw from the vessel a crab of about three or four inches in diameter. This circumstance was indeed most astonishing, as the fountain was surrounded by solid rock, and had no apparent outlet whatever. My ape seem'd to eat his crab with so much pleasure, that I ordered thirty of them to be caught ; and when they were roasted I found them excellent. Four or five discharges

of my fufee procured us above forty moor-fowl of a very beautiful fpecies, which were accuftomed to come by thoufands, and light on the borders of this fountain. The Hottentots of the colonies call them *Nimiqua partridges*, becaufe in the rainy feafon they all emigrate towards the tropics. Reckoning from the time when we encamped at this fountain, we found nothing but coarfe plants and locufts: we were indeed in a moft defolate place; four of my oxen, having not ftrength fufficient to follow us, remained on the fpot; and I faw, with no fmall grief, that my dogs halted, and could fcarcely drag themfelves along. As the foles of their feet were torn and cut to the very quick, I ordered them to be rubbed over with greafe, that they might be induced to lick them, and to be put into my carriages until they fhould be in a condition to walk. My horfes being attacked by the fame diforder as my oxen, I caufed fmall bags or covers to be made of fkins, and, having greafed their hoofs well, I faftened them on their feet by tying them above the tarfus. I wifhed to fubject my oxen to the fame operation, but thefe intractable animals would never have fubmitted to it peaceably; befides  
greafe

grease and skins would not have been sufficient. My carriages also were in a most wretched condition; for, as they had not been moistened for a long time, they made a noise when they moved forwards like so many rattles. Though we fell in with different fountains, and the beds of several rivers or torrents which we crossed in our way, and from which we hoped for relief, we were still deceived in our expectations. Our animals were reduced to the necessity of putting their noses to the earth, and of licking such places as seemed still to retain some moisture; being besides deprived of every kind of succulent grass, no other resource was left us but to collect a few coarse parched herbs, which occasioned acute pains in their bowels, so that they entirely lost their flesh, and seemed to be converted into skeletons.

In this distressing situation we continued till the 24th in the evening. Having crossed the *Swart Rivier*, or Black River, which had no more water in its bed than the rest, we were just on the point of unyoking our oxen, when I perceived a flock of sheep. I immediately ran up to the shepherd, and being informed that he belonged to a planter who resided



resided at the distance of scarcely a league, we pursued our route towards it, and encamped near a large pond, where we at length had the satisfaction of finding water in abundance. The owner of these sheep was named *Adami Robenbymer*, and his plantation was called *Keveec-Valey*. I received every mark of politeness from this gentleman, as well as from his family, which consisted of only two daughters. One of them, *Dina Sagrias-de-Beer*, the daughter of his wife by a former husband, was one of the most beautiful African ladies I had ever seen. These charming hosts pressed me to spend a few days with them; and the bewitching *Dina* joined to her invitation such mild and natural graces, that I readily yielded to her repeated solicitations, and consented to remain a few days. In the evening, however, I did not fail to pay a visit to my camp, according to my usual custom; as the place where I was, and the necessity of preserving good order, made me more than ever lay it down as an invariable rule not to sleep out of it: I was besides so much accustomed to my hard mattresses, that a softer or more commodious bed would really have prevented me from sleeping. This agreeable repose for a few  
days

days was above all extremely serviceable to my poor cattle, worn out with hunger and fatigue: I was every moment apprehensive that I should be obliged to abandon my carriages and my effects; but this last halting revived us a little. The situation of this spot was delightful; the scenery around it was beautifully variegated; and the environs of the plantation afforded my oxen, as well as my people, abundance of every thing proper for restoring their lost strength, had I only remained longer in this retreat: but I was more and more sensible of the necessity of approaching the Cape, and my exhausted imagination rendered my return indispensable. I was therefore once more obliged to tear myself from so many attractions, and to pursue my journey. The beautiful Dina having learned of my people (for she informed herself of every thing) that the biscuits I had procured from the negroes were almost at an end, she begged me to accept a small supply which she had made herself. On the first of March, after returning thanks to my amiable hosts, I took leave of them, at five in the afternoon, and marched forwards to the *Gamka*, or *Leuw-Rivier*, the Lion River; where we arrived at nine in the evening, and encamped.

Lions

Lions formerly were very common near this river, because antelopes also were found here in great abundance; but when the inhabitants approached nearer to each other, the antelopes disappeared, and lions consequently are become much scarcer. Having heard at Keveec-Valey that three formidable troops of Boshmen were ranging in the neighbourhood of that place, I thought it would be imprudent to penetrate farther the first night; besides this, I had been informed that, after crossing the *Gamka*, until I reached the Buffaloes River, I should not find a single drop of water. The distance between these rivers was full twenty-five leagues: that I might not perish with thirst, it was necessary to perform this passage in two days, and it was impossible to travel during the heat of the day without destroying both my people and cattle. I resolved therefore to remain two days on the Lion River, to strengthen and refresh my oxen as much as possible; and, in the evening of the second day, banishing every idea of fear, and paying little regard to the terror of my Hottentots, I resumed my journey, taking the precaution to station my whole caravan between two carriages, which served as an advanced  
and

and a rear-guard. A forced march of two days, or rather two nights, performed with the greatest regularity, conducted us to the banks of the river which we had so long wished to see. During the night-time I had not neglected to order my people to discharge their pieces on both sides of us every six minutes; and from time to time I gave my horses, which were ready to faint with the heat and fatigue, a refreshment of water from my jars. My cattle had neither eat nor drank; they all panted for breath, and seemed every moment ready to drop down on the spot; nevertheless, though it was late in the evening before we arrived at the Buffalo River, my relays, and all the cattle that marched at liberty, having discovered the stream, began to run forwards across the meadows in the greatest disorder to quench their thirst. Those which drew the carriages resumed their courage, and completed the passage in less than a quarter of an hour; but had it not been for the attention of my people, who cut the traces of the most intractable, my three carriages would have been overturned in the river. We all of us followed the example of our animals, and the bath soon made me forget my fatigue.

When

When our fires were kindled a part of our animals joined us; I was extremely uneasy for the rest, but we heard them making a noise among the bushes which surrounded us, and I concluded that they were searching for food. They however arrived all at the break of day, except one pair of oxen, which we never afterwards saw: my goat also strayed, and did not return till some time after in the course of the day.

When I awoke in the morning I was very much surprised to find myself in a delightful country, which the obscurity of the night had prevented me from observing. The river was not broad, but the abundance and depth of its waters diffused throughout the neighbourhood a freshness so much the more agreeable, as the heat was excessive: it runs with a hundred windings through beautiful green fields, and I never saw so agreeable groves as those with which its banks are crowned. An infinite number of partridges and moor-fowl by their cries formed a very striking contrast with those of different kinds of ducks, herons, brown swans, and flamingoes, with which the river was covered. All my people with one voice having begged me to stop here some days,

I readily consented, and was exceedingly glad that they had anticipated my wishes. This was one of those delightful retreats which prove that the imaginations of the poets do not always in their descriptions exceed the bounds of nature and truth. The spot, however, where we had passed the night, was not the most favourable; some large rocks in our neighbourhood covered both it and us too much, and might have enabled the enemy to surprize us with much ease; on this account we conveyed our carriages and our baggage to the middle of a small meadow, which the winding of the river rendered almost a peninsula, and there we erected our tents.

From the plantation of the two negroes already mentioned we had performed a march of eighty leagues; and one can scarcely conceive what we suffered in this passage. How much relief should I have derived from the sheep which I exchanged with the Hottentots of Snewberg! From that period we did not meet with the smallest article of game, and not even a pond of water so pure that we could use it without great precaution; none of that which we found was fit to be drunk until we had boiled it either with tea or coffee, to  
destroy,

destroy, or at least to conceal, its noxious and disagreeable qualities.

The beauties of the spot, and the abundance of every necessary which the Buffalo River procured us, were not the only motives that induced us to remain so long on its banks. I continued here till the 14th of the month, employed only in repairing my carriages, the ruined condition of which had for a long time given me great uneasiness. They were so much shattered, and the sun had so dried them, that they were ready to fall to pieces; it was necessary above all to renew the wheels, as all the spokes were loose in the naves. I ordered them to be put into water to make the wood swell; and they remained there a long time before they received any assistance from the hatchet. As for my part, I reviewed my collection, which was far from being in proper order; and this business was a work of no little labour. Every thing almost that I had contained birds: my tea-chests, and my boxes for holding coffee and sugar, were all filled with them. I now expected soon to reach the centre of the colonies; and I should have considered the slightest accident that might have happened to retard our march as a great misfortune.

tune. Being persuaded that we had nothing more to fear from the Boshmen, and seeing all my people sufficiently composed and freed from their terrors, I resolved to travel night and day; and in consequence of this determination I departed on the 14th, at five in the evening, observing the same order as before. Having halted at midnight, near the Matjes-Fontein, the atmosphere became overcast, and seemed to threaten a storm; but it passed by us, and next morning I crossed the Wet-Waater, and unyoked my cattle at *Constapel*, an agreeable plantation, which the owners have been obliged to abandon on account of a scarcity of water. Though the season was now far advanced, the heat had not yet decreased, and we were obliged to remain inactive during the middle of the day, when the sun's rays darted upon us with the greatest force; we were scorched so much the more, as we could find no shade or place of shelter to secure us from them: the relaxed state in which we were did not even permit us to amuse ourselves with hunting. It is well known that stifling heat tends greatly to destroy the appetite, and that it corrupts meat whether fresh or salted, and renders it very disgusting; the



operations of our kitchen were suspended therefore for some time. My Hottentots slept during the day: as for me, I lived on Miss Dina's biscuits; and all the indulgence I allowed myself was to steep them in goat's milk, which I always tasted with pleasure. I cannot recommend too strongly to travellers who undertake such journeys as mine, to procure a great number of these docile and useful animals. They are fond of man, attach themselves to him, every where follow him, occasion no embarrassment, and require little or no care. Every day they will supply enough for their nourishment, and to quench their thirst; and these poor brutes, which are not delicate like some other animals, and which are contented with almost any thing, can endure thirst a long time without losing their milk.

The 16th and the 17th, after crossing *Touws-Rivier*, I advanced six leagues farther; and, near *Werkeerde-Valey*, reached a very large lake, upon the borders of which was a small plantation, entrusted by the owner, who was absent, to the care of some Hottentots. Having found here a planter who had recently quitted the Cape in order to go to *Camdebo*, I was relieved from a load which had long oppressed

pressed me, by learning that Mr. Boers was perfectly recovered, and that he had returned to the town. In this spot I had an opportunity of meeting with birds of various kinds, and, among others, some coots exactly like those of Europe; but the marshes near the lake furnished me with such a number of snipes that they became our ordinary food.

As there were a great many hogs upon this plantation, I purchased one of them; but I was obliged to go and choose it myself, and take it from the reeds; because, as I have already observed, when speaking of the manner in which they are bred, these had become quite wild. I bought also some flour, in order that I might regale my people with the first bread they had eat since my departure: Klaas's wife prepared it, and she indeed succeeded wonderfully well. Having quitted Werkeerde-Valey, we entered on the 21st another country, called the Boke-Veld, or plain of the springbocks\*, which undoubtedly abounded there formerly; but at this time none of them were any where to be seen. On the hills, every where around us, we observed several plantations, from which we in vain endeavoured to

\* A kind of antelopes.

remove, for the farther we went the more frequent they became. I was under the necessity of passing close to that of John Pinar. Though he earnestly requested me to stop and refresh myself at his house, I declined his invitation, and pursued my journey; but the inhabitants, whether white men, Hottentots, or negroes, all hastened to see my caravan file off, almost in the same manner as in our great cities people flock to see some curious shew or uncommon spectacle. My beard, above all, in a country where neither Jews nor capuchins are ever known, appeared to be a wonderful and an extraordinary phenomenon; though it put the children to flight, and struck a great terror into the women. After disembarassing myself with great difficulty from the importunity of the inquisitive, who harassed me with their questions, I reached, at half after eleven at night, a peaceful inhabited retreat, at the distance of three leagues: but the news of my return were spread abroad; and next morning, scarcely had daylight appeared, when more than twenty of the inhabitants, attracted by curiosity, surrounded my camp, that, whatever route I should pursue, it might be impossible for me to escape them.

These

These people had taken great pleasure in propagating an hundred absurd tales respecting me; and they asked me an hundred ridiculous questions one after the other: they asserted, for example, that I had brought back waggon loads of gold-dust and jewels, found in the rivers, or on rocks, never before explored. One of these credulous peasants begged me to shew him that magnificent precious stone, superior to the diamond, and as large as an egg, found in the head of an enormous serpent, with which I had fought a most desperate and bloody battle. I mention these absurdities merely to justify what I have said elsewhere respecting that stupid fondness for the marvellous, by which the planters amuse their idle hours, and dissipate the languor which oppresses them.

I intended to remain recluse in the place where I was till evening, but the number of the curious increased so much every minute, that I lost all patience, and departed abruptly. In vain did I attempt to avoid three or four plantations situated in the canton through which it was necessary for me to pass; importunity every where pursued me, so that I had no other resource but to take advantage of the obscurity of the night, and to go almost like a

malefactor, and conceal myself at the bottom of an enormous chain of mountains named *Cloof*, which forms the limits of another country called *Roye-Sand*.

This mountain, like an immense curtain, raised by the hand of misfortune before me, seemed placed there to disconcert me still more, and to increase my uneasiness. It was however necessary either to overcome this obstacle, or to make a very long circuit, the extent of which I did not know, nor how much time it might require. I was no longer animated by that impetuous ardour which I had shewn at my departure; nor by that invincible courage which cherished in my soul the love of novelties, and the impatient desire of being the first to take possession of a country so curious and so little known. I found myself in turns stopped by discouragement, and hurried forwards by gratitude and friendship. I formed therefore my resolution, and determined to climb in the best manner I could to the top of the mountain. The steepness of the way, and the quagmires which I had to encounter in this passage, almost frightened me. Yet this is the usual route of the neighbouring planters, who choose rather to run the risque  
of

of losing their cattle and carriages than unite to make a proper road, or at least to repair some passes; an evident proof both of their inattention and their indolence.

For my own safety I ventured to undertake this business. I employed the whole day of the 24th in cutting down branches of trees to fill up the deep fissures, and in covering them over with stones, sand, and earth. In this operation I succeeded; and on the 25th, in the space of four hours, thanks to the precautions which we had taken, and the exertions which my people with great cheerfulness made, at the expence of a very trifling loss, we had the inexpressible happiness of passing the frightful precipice, the only one that we had occasion to dread. The planters call this horrible road *Master-Hoec*, or Master's Corner. We encamped at the bottom of the mountain, on the other side; and next day halted in the morning at the entrance of *Roye-Sand*, near the ruins of a plantation which appeared to have been long deserted.

This canton in my opinion, is very improperly name *Roye-Sand*, or Red Sand, for I observed none of that colour: I remarked, on the contrary, that it was absolutely yellow.

This country is fertile in corn; and the crops are rich, and every where appear in great abundance. We from time to time had a view of delightful plantations, each more agreeably situated than another; and the variety of the buildings formed every where such interesting prospects as afforded the highest gratification to the sight. It is possible that, as I had been accustomed for sixteen months to views of a bolder and grander nature, the contrast of wild countries, and their habitations, as dismal as uncommon, with the new order of things that presented itself to my eye, might make a deeper impression on my imagination. However this may be, I was never tired of contemplating these beautiful scenes.

All those chimerical and romantic ideas which had flattered my fancy, and all those melancholy reflections which I had indulged on quitting the savages, began now to vanish; and reason resuming its empire, convinced me that, not being destined for such a wandering and precarious life, I had other obligations to discharge, and other objects to cherish. I already smiled at different circumstances, the remembrance of which brought full in my view my former pleasures and past manner of  
life,

life. Friendship above all, arrayed in her full graces, and such as she ought to be to please delicate and tender souls, seemed to call me at a distance, and to stretch out her arms towards me. Other sentiments perhaps came to her assistance, to make me unbend my brow, and to incite me more and more to bring my journey to a conclusion. Certain, from the information I had received, that I should find Mr. Boers at the Cape in good health, every step I made towards the town added to the transports of my impatience, which my people sincerely shared along with me. It was impossible for me to be so near the Cape without wishing to see the road that was to conduct me thither disappear behind me: my whole thoughts therefore were occupied with the pleasure I expected to feel on seeing my friends; but above all in embracing him, who on many accounts had the best claim to the first and most distinguished place in my affection.

On the 26th, after having escaped, if I may express myself so, ten plantations which lay in our way, I crossed the Broad River; a league farther, the *Waater-Val*, or Water-fall; and afterwards some more plantations, which undoubtedly



doubtedly had been long waiting to see me pass; for the inhabitants, observing that I did not stop, ran after me as if I had been a curious wild beast, and never quitted me till they had surveyed me for some time. Having crossed the *Roye-Sand-Kloof*, the Valley of Red Sand, and the *Klein-Berg-Rivier*, or Little River of the Mountains, when I arrived next morning, the 27th, at *Swart-Land*, I ordered my horses, which I had not used for some time, to be saddled; and leaving a number of inquisitive planters around my carriages and baggage, I advanced forwards, accompanied by my faithful Klaas; and arrived with much pleasure the same evening, at the house of my ancient host, the worthy Slaber, who had so nobly entertained me two years before, when I met with the dreadful disaster already mentioned at the bay of Saldanha.

Words could hardly express the joy, and above all the astonishment, which my arrival occasioned to all this respectable family. They expected it so little; I was so disguised by my beard, and the accounts which had been propagated at the Cape, and in the neighbourhood, of the distant excursions and the dangers to which I had exposed myself, rendered

my death so probable, that they were all terrified on my approach. The women particularly declared bloody war against that thick and black covering which obscured part of my visage. It had, indeed, for some time been entirely useless, and consequently a burden to me. Mitje-Slaber, the youngest of my host's daughters, obligingly offered to free me from it. I therefore fell down on my knees and devoted my head as a sacrifice. Scarcely had I arrived at this happy retreat, when I dispatched Klaas to Mr. Boers to inform him of my return; and I sent him, at the same time, two of those small antelopes called *steen-bocks*, and a few partridges which I had killed by the way. Next morning I received the congratulations of my friend, who sent me two of his best horses, and earnestly pressed me to repair to his house immediately.

The same day my people, whom I had left behind, arrived with my carriages. The moment of our separation was now approaching; we had both of us reciprocally forgot our animosities; some gave vent to sighs, others shed tears; and, while I could not contain mine, we comforted ourselves with the hopes of a second journey, should circumstances become favourable,

I distributed among these faithful companions of my fatigues and adventures all the remainder of my effects, and such things as could be of no utility to me in the town; to which I added even my linen and other clothes reserving nothing but what I had on my body. I begged two of these Hottentots to remain some days more with Mr. Slaber, to take care of my she-goats and sick or useless oxen which I left on the plantation till farther orders. I then appointed Mr. Boers's house as a rendezvous for the rest of my caravan; and Klaas and I having mounted our horses, the same evening I enjoyed the happiness of embracing a friend and benefactor whom I had been apprehensive of never again seeing.

My baggage arrived on the 2d of April, and it was then that I returned thanks to my faithful servants, and paid them their wages. They were all burning with impatience to revisit their families. I stretched out my hand to Klaas, who could scarcely tear himself from his master; and, as his horde was at a less distance from the town than that of the other Hottentots whom I had discharged, I desired him to visit me often, and promised him a continuance of my protection, my confidence, and my

my friendship. I, above all, assured him that I would not remain long inactive at the Cape, and that I depended upon his assistance for new enterprises. This was the sole object of his desires, and the only alleviation of his sorrow. I must indeed confess that I could not see him depart without the greatest emotion, though distracted by crowds of visitors who thronged into my friend's house, some of whom were attracted by a generous concern for my welfare, but the greater number by a desire of gratifying their eager curiosity.

---

I HAVE placed at the end of this volume the figures of a male and female giraffe, though I met with these animals only in my second journey. This, therefore, is a kind of anticipation that may appear irregular, but to which I have in some measure been constrained by solicitations which I ought to consider as commands.

By way of supplement, and as an explanation of these two plates, I have added a hasty sketch respecting the natural history of the animals which they represent, reserving more  
essential

essential and fuller details for that part in this work where they naturally ought to appear.

Many and various accounts have been published of the giraffe; but, notwithstanding all the elegant and scientific dissertations written on this subject, no just or precise idea hath been hitherto formed of its configuration, much less of its manners, its tastes, its character, and its organization.

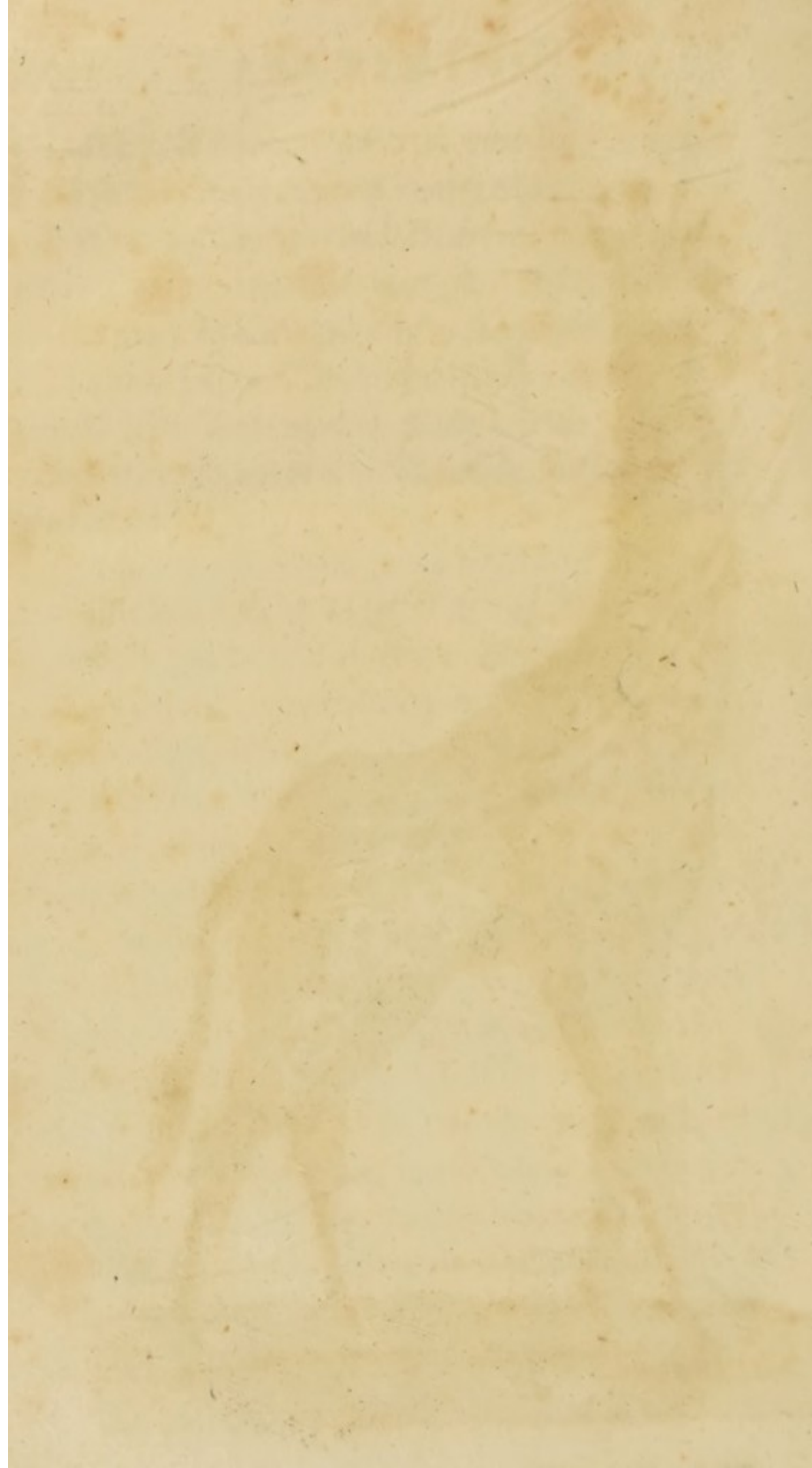
If, among the known quadrupedes, precedence be allowed to height, the giraffe without doubt must hold the first rank. A male, which I have in my collection, and of which a figure is given in the eighth plate, measured after I killed it sixteen feet four inches, from the hoof to the extremity of its horns. I use this expression in order to be understood; for, the giraffe has no real horns, but between its ears, at the upper extremity of the head, arise in a perpendicular and parallel direction, two excrescences from the cranium, which, without any joint, stretch to the height of eight or nine inches, terminating in a convex knob, and are surrounded by a row of strong straight hair, which overtops them by several lines.

The female is generally lower than the male. That represented in the following plate  
was



*Keith del.*

Male Giraffe or Camelopardalis.



was only thirteen feet six inches in height; and her incisive teeth, which were almost all worn away, incontestably proved that she had attained to her full growth.

In consequence of the number of these animals which I killed and had an opportunity of seeing I may establish as a certain rule, that the males are generally fifteen or sixteen feet in height, and the females from thirteen to fourteen.

Whoever should judge of the size and thickness of these animals from the above dimensions, would be greatly deceived. I may almost say that they consist of nothing but neck and legs. The eye, indeed, that is accustomed to the long full figures of Europe, finds no proportion between a height of sixteen feet and a length of seven, taken from the tail to the breast. Another deformity, if it may be called so, makes us contrast the parts before with those behind. The former have a considerable thickness towards the shoulders, but the latter are so thin and meagre that they do not seem formed the one for the other.

Naturalists and travellers who speak of the giraffe, all agree in making the hind legs only half the length of those before; but did those  
who



who assert so really see the animal, or, if they saw it, did they consider it attentively?

An Italian author, who certainly never saw it, caused a figure of it to be engraved at Venice, in a work entitled *Descrizioni degli animali*, 1771. This figure is formed exactly from the descriptions which had then been published of the animal; but this exactness renders it so ridiculous, that we must consider it, on the part of the Italian author, as a severe criticism on all the accounts which had appeared, and which have been so often repeated.

Of all the old authors\* who have spoken of this animal, the most exact is Gilius, who says expressly that “the giraffe has its four legs of the same length; but that the fore thighs are so long in comparison of those behind, that the back of the animal appears inclined like the roof of a house.” If by the fore thighs Gilius means the omoplate or shoulder blade, his assertion is just, and I perfectly agree with him.

\* Among the moderns, the most exact engraving is without doubt that which was executed under the inspection of Dr. Allaman, from drawings furnished by Colonel Gordon.



*South Sc*

The Female Giraffe or Camelopardalis.



The account given by Heliodorus is far from being so correct. If we believe that he speaks of a giraffe, when he says its head is only double the size of that of the ostrich, we must conclude that things have changed much since, and that, in the lapse of time, Nature has made either the one or the other of these animals suffer great variations.

The horns forming part of the cranium, as I have already said, can never fall off. They are not solid like those of the stag, nor composed of any substance analogous to those of the ox; much less do they consist of hair united, as Buffon supposes. They are simply of a bony calcareous substance, divided by a multitude of small pores like all bones, and are covered throughout their whole length with short coarse hair, which has no resemblance to the soft down that covers the young horns of roe-bucks or stags.

The figures of this animal, given in the works of Buffon and Vosmar, are in general defective. These authors have made the horns terminate in a point, which is contrary to the truth. Instead of bringing the mane only to the shoulders, they have prolonged it to the root of the tail; a mistake which, added to

many others, disgraces and renders of no utility to science these false representations, which people very improperly confide in, on account of the reputation of the authors who publish them.

The giraffes, both male and female, are spotted in the same manner; but, without paying attention to inequality of size, they may easily be distinguished from each other even at a distance. The male, on a greyish white ground, has large spots of a dark brown colour, almost approaching to black; and the female, on a like ground, has spots of a tawny colour, which renders them less striking. The young males are at first of the colour of their mother, but, in proportion as they advance in age and size, they become browner.

These quadrupedes feed upon the leaves of trees, and particularly on those of a mimosa, peculiar to the canton which they inhabit. Meadow grass forms also part of their aliment; but they are not under the necessity of kneeling down to browse or to drink, as some have improperly believed. They often lie down to ruminate or to sleep, which causes a considerable callosity on the sternum, and makes their knees to be always covered with a hard skin.

Had

Had Nature endowed the giraffe with an irascible disposition, it certainly would have had cause to complain; for the means with which it is provided, either for attack or defence, are very trifling. It is indeed a peaceful and timid animal; it shuns danger, and flies from it, trotting along very fast: a good horse can with difficulty overtake it.

It is said that it has not strength to defend itself; but I know, beyond a doubt, that by its kicking it often tires out, discourages, and even beats off the lion. Except upon one occasion I never saw it make use of its horns: they may be considered as of no utility, were it possible to doubt of the wisdom and precaution employed by Nature, whose motives we are not always able to comprehend.

I have thought it necessary, in compliance with the wishes of those who requested them, to accompany these two figures with a concise description, which will serve to illustrate them better: but I must inform the reader, that I have not here said all that I intend respecting this extraordinary animal.

Directions to the Binder for placing the Copper-plates.

---

V O L. I.

Encampment in the Great Nimiqua country to front the title.	
View of the mountains at the Cape of Good Hope to front page	14
Encampment at Pampoën-Kraal	165
Hottentot man	211
Hottentot woman	258
Narina, a young Gonaqua girl	361

---

V O L. II,

A Gonaqua man	2
A Caffre man	282
A Caffre woman	284
A Hottentot woman	350
The male giraffe	398
The female ditto	400

